German

An Essential Grammar

German: An Essential Grammar is a practical reference guide to the core structures and features of modern German. Presenting a fresh and accessible description of the language, this engaging grammar uses clear, jargon-free explanations and sets out the complexities of German in short, readable sections.

Suitable for either independent study or students in schools, colleges, universities and adult education classes, key features include:

• focus on the morphology and syntax of the language
• clear explanations of grammatical terms
• full use of authentic examples
• detailed contents list and index for easy access to information.

With an emphasis on the German native speakers use today, German: An Essential Grammar will help students to read, speak and write the language with greater confidence.

Bruce Donaldson is Principal Fellow in the Department of German, Russian and Swedish Studies in the School of Languages and Linguistics at the University of Melbourne. He has been a prolific author of language learning and teaching materials, including the following publications: Mastering German Vocabulary (2004), Colloquial Afrikaans (2000), Dutch: A Comprehensive Grammar (1997), Colloquial Dutch (1996) and Colloquial Dutch 2 (2005).
Routledge Essential Grammars

Essential Grammars are available for the following languages:

Chinese
Danish
Dutch
English
Finnish
Modern Greek
Modern Hebrew
Hungarian
Norwegian
Polish
Portuguese
Spanish
Swedish
Thai
Urdu

Other titles of related interest published by Routledge:

Basic German: A Grammar and Workbook
By Heiner Schenke and Karen Seago

By William Dodd
German

An Essential Grammar

Bruce Donaldson
Contents

Introduction xi
Abbreviations xv

Chapter 1 Pronunciation 1
  1.1 Vowels 1
  1.2 Diphthongs 3
  1.3 Consonants 3
  1.4 Stress 7
  1.5 Regional variants 8

Chapter 2 Spelling 9
  2.1 Indicating vowel length 9
  2.2 Use of the Umlaut 9
  2.3 Use of capital letters 10
  2.4 Use of the hyphen 10
  2.5 The new spelling 11
  2.6 The alphabet 12

Chapter 3 Punctuation 13
  3.1 Commas 13
  3.2 Colons with direct speech 15
  3.3 Inverted commas/quotation marks 15
  3.4 Exclamation marks 16

Chapter 4 Case 17
  4.1 Case endings on nouns 18
  4.2 Other uses of the nominative case 20
  4.3 Other uses of the accusative case 20
  4.4 The genitive case 21
4.5 Other uses of the dative case 22
4.6 Nouns in apposition 23
4.7 Order of cases in paradigms 24

Chapter 5 Articles and other determiners 25
5.1 The definite article 25
5.2 Other determiners inflected like der/die/das 29
5.3 The indefinite article 30
5.4 Other determiners inflected like ein 32
5.5 Indefinite pronouns used as determiners 32

Chapter 6 Nouns 33
6.1 Gender of nouns 33
6.2 Pluralization of nouns 37
6.3 Diminutization of nouns 41
6.4 Names of towns 42
6.5 Names of countries 44
6.6 Feminizing agents 44
6.7 Adjectival nouns 45
6.8 Compound nouns 47
6.9 Nouns in apposition (see 4.6) 48

Chapter 7 Pronouns 49
7.1 Personal pronouns 49
7.2 Possessives 58
7.3 Reflexive pronouns 60
7.4 Demonstrative pronouns 63
7.5 Interrogative pronouns 63
7.6 Relative pronouns 64
7.7 Indefinite pronouns 69

Chapter 8 Adjectives 75
8.1 Rules for inflection 76
8.1.1 The der/die/das (weak) endings 76
8.1.2 The ein/eine/ein (mixed) endings 76
8.1.3 The unpreceded adjectival (strong) endings 77
8.1.4 Adjectival endings after indefinite pronouns 78
8.1.5 Indeclinable adjectives 78
8.2 Comparative of adjectives and adverbs 79
8.3 Superlative of adjectives and adverbs 81
8.4 Predicate adjectives followed by a prepositional object 83
## Chapter 9 Adverbs

- 9.1 Adverbs that are also adjectives
- 9.2 Comparative and superlative of adverbs
- 9.3 Intensifying adverbs
- 9.4 Adverbs of time
- 9.5 Adverbs of place and direction
- 9.6 Adverbs of manner and degree
- 9.7 Interrogative adverbs

## Chapter 10 Verbs

- 10.1 Formation of tenses
  - 10.1.1 The present tense
  - 10.1.2 The future tense
  - 10.1.3 The imperative
  - 10.1.4 The imperfect tense
  - 10.1.5 The perfect tense
  - 10.1.6 The pluperfect tense
  - 10.1.7 The future perfect tense
  - 10.1.8 The conditional tense
  - 10.1.9 The conditional perfect tense
- 10.2 Modal auxiliary verbs
  - 10.2.1 Double infinitive constructions
  - 10.2.2 Modals used with perfective infinitives
- 10.3 The subjunctive
  - 10.3.1 The subjunctive I
  - 10.3.2 The subjunctive II
- 10.4 The passive
- 10.5 The infinitive
  - 10.5.1 Characteristics of the infinitive
  - 10.5.2 Rules for the use of *zu* with infinitives
  - 10.5.3 Use of *um ... zu* before infinitives
  - 10.5.4 Double infinitive constructions (see 10.2.1)
  - 10.5.5 The infinitive used as a noun
- 10.6 Participles
  - 10.6.1 Present participles
  - 10.6.2 Past participles
  - 10.6.3 Use of present and past participles in extended adjectival phrases (see 7.6.4)
- 10.7 Progressive tenses
- 10.8 Reflexive verbs
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>Verbal prefixes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.9.1</td>
<td>Verbs with separable prefixes (separable verbs)</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.9.2</td>
<td>Verbs with inseparable prefixes (inseparable verbs)</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.9.3</td>
<td>Verbs with variable prefixes (separable or inseparable verbs)</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.10</td>
<td>Verbs followed by prepositional objects</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.10.1</td>
<td>Use of prepositional adverbs before subordinate clauses</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.11</td>
<td>Transitive and intransitive verbs</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.11.1</td>
<td>Use of <em>sein</em> and <em>lassen</em> with intransitive verbs</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.11.2</td>
<td>Intransitive verbs and the passive</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.12</td>
<td>List of irregular verbs</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.12.1</td>
<td>Alphabetical list of irregular verbs</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Chapter 11 Conjunctions</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>Coordinating conjunctions</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>Subordinating conjunctions</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>Conjunctions introducing infinitive clauses</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>Correlative conjunctions</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Chapter 12 Prepositions</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>Prepositions that take the accusative case</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.2</td>
<td>Prepositions that take the dative case</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>Prepositions that take both the accusative and the dative case</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>Prepositions that take the genitive case</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>Contraction of prepositions with the definite article</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>How to translate ‘to’ into German</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Chapter 13 Numerals</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>Cardinal numerals</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>Ordinal numerals</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>Fractions</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4</td>
<td>Arithmetic/calculation</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>Age</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>Money</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>Telling the time</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>Dates</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.9</td>
<td>Weights</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
There are numerous German grammars on the market, so why this one? This book has been written specifically with the needs of the intermediate learner at secondary or particularly tertiary level in mind. It is intended to be used as a reference grammar, which does not mean that it is utterly comprehensive, but it does cover everything that might be called ‘essential’ knowledge for someone who has reached the intermediate level.

So what constitutes the intermediate level? That depends of course, but it would certainly apply to anyone who has completed an elementary course in German at a university, i.e. people who are in their second or third year of tertiary German, having started it at university without having done it at school. Students at advanced secondary level, however, would also qualify as intermediate and will thus find this book pitched at their needs, as will those teaching themselves who are progressing beyond what one might call beginners’ level. Once you have mastered the contents of this book, you will have reached a point in your learning of German where you are able to express yourself at quite a sophisticated level. Needless to say, you will also need to be concentrating on building up your vocabulary – grammar is useless on its own.

Other than being a book pitched squarely at the needs of the intermediate learner, what does this book offer its readers that other similar books may not? It has been written by someone with nearly forty years of experience in teaching German and Dutch at tertiary level, specializing in teaching students in their second year of German at university. The author is all too well aware of the shortcomings of the many textbooks available for the learning of German – take for example the way in which nearly all such books tackle German plurals. They nearly all fail to help the learner see through to the underlying system and thus fail to illustrate that plural formation is not nearly as arbitrary as it often appears to be to the newcomer to the language. How many books, for example, in their first introduction
to plural formation, mention that Mann has a plural in Männer, but fail to mention that there are only about ten masculine nouns in the entire language that have a plural in -er, which is otherwise an ending limited to neuter nouns? How many grammars tell you, to take another example, that possibly no more than 10 per cent of German nouns are neuter? So, if forced to guess a gender, it would be safer to assume the noun is masculine or feminine before assuming it is neuter. These two examples are typical of many of the underlying truths about German grammar that one discovers only through learning and teaching the language. These are also things which seldom strike the native speaker and why, at certain levels of learning a language, one may be better off with non-native teachers – they have been through the mill, as it were, which natives by definition have not. This book contains numerous such insights into German, acquired over many years of involvement with the language, both as a student and as a teacher. The author has applied his insights and long experience in explaining the intricacies of German to English-speaking people in as simple a fashion as the often complex material permits. German is certainly not simple – but then no language is – but it can be explained in a simpler, more palatable fashion than many books do.

Learning German is a challenge, but the rewards are great. No language other than English is of more use to you when travelling around Europe. Not only are there many more Germans (82 million) than there are French, Italians or Spaniards, for example, but the countries of Austria, Switzerland and Luxembourg further swell those numbers by several million native-speakers, not to mention the German-speaking minorities living in Russia, Romania, Hungary, Italy, Belgium and Denmark. All in all, the number of native-speakers of German living in Europe is nigh on 100 million. But go travelling through eastern Europe and you will be amazed at how well Poles, Hungarians and even Latvians, for example, can speak German too; their German is often much better than their English. Germany is an economic power of enormous importance and lies both physically and philosophically at the heart of the European Union. If you are interested in Europe and seek to broaden your linguistic and cultural horizons, you need look no further than German.

Other books you might refer to may use different names for several of the grammatical concepts dealt with in this book. Particularly in the American and British English-speaking worlds different terminology is often used for various concepts. For this reason, where alternative terminology exists for a given concept, it is briefly discussed before proceeding with the issue
under consideration and all grammatical concepts can be accessed under all alternative names via the index.

There is an old German maxim: **ohne Vergleich kein Verständnis** (without comparison, there is no understanding). The approach to German grammar adopted in this book is strongly contrastive with English. English and German are after all, as languages go, very closely related and have a great deal in common. Look, for example, at the past tenses of irregular verbs (**trinken/trank/getrunken**) and the forms and functions of modal verbs (**kann/muss/will**). These are grammatical complexities that clearly stem from a common source, namely the Anglo-Saxon invasion of Britain in the fifth century AD. And then there is all that common vocabulary dating from the same time, e.g. **Mutter, Vater, Sohn, Tochter, Hund, Katze, Schwein** etc. All that the two languages have in common is a godsend to the learner, but then there is so much that the two do not (or no longer, as is often the case) have in common and this is where taking a contrastive approach can be invaluable. However, in order to do so, you need to be aware of exactly what the grammatical situation is in English with regard to a given issue. There are issues of which a native-speaker is often unaware. This is all the more so these days, when English at school level throughout the English-speaking world seldom includes analysis of formal grammar the way it used to. Generally speaking, this now means that the only people who leave school or university with any formal knowledge of English grammar are those who have learnt a foreign language and have therefore had to comprehend the intricacies of English grammar in order to access those of the foreign language being learnt. This is an added bonus in the learning of a language like German. English and German are oh so similar and oh so different. Unlocking the door to those similarities and differences is something this grammar sets out to do.

This book is intended as a reference grammar of ‘essential’ German and, as such, does not set out to be comprehensive, as previously mentioned. All the important concepts of German grammar are dealt with in considerable detail, with only minor exceptions and subtleties of grammar being left uncovered. The advanced learner who has mastered the contents of this book and who wishes to progress to a fully comprehensive reference grammar of German is advised to consider M. Durrell’s **Hammer’s German Grammar and Usage** (Arnold, London, 4th edition 2002).

**German: An Essential Grammar** only addresses grammatical issues, but many of the intricacies of mastering German are more lexical than grammatical in nature. The reader is referred to another work by the
If you’ve been looking for a challenge, you need look no further. You’ve found it. Learning German is intellectually very rewarding and terrific fun. It is like unravelling a complicated puzzle, one with an underlying code that needs to be cracked. Penetrating the thoroughly logical system that underlies the intricate weave of grammatical inflection that is the result of gender and case, combined with a myriad of word order rules that are at odds with what prevails in English, constitutes the challenge. Mastering this system is a form of mental gymnastics beyond compare and constitutes a feat that will give tremendous intellectual satisfaction as well as enabling you to converse with 100 million Europeans in their own idiom rather than lazily expecting them, as the overwhelming number of English speakers do, to converse with you in your mother tongue. And it is an effort that you will find is greatly appreciated and admired by German speakers.

About the author

Bruce Donaldson was born in Perth, Western Australia, in 1948. He did honours in German at the University of Western Australia, his MA in Old Germanic Languages at the State University of Utrecht and his PhD on Afrikaans at the University of the Orange Free State in Bloemfontein, South Africa. In 1973 he was appointed as lecturer in charge of Dutch and Germanic historical linguistics in the then Department of Germanic Studies at the University of Melbourne, from where he retired as associate professor and reader in 2004. For the last twelve years of his career, after the abolition of Dutch in 1992, he lectured in German, specializing in the intermediate level. He is currently a principal research fellow in his former department. He has written numerous monographs on Dutch, Afrikaans and German language issues, most of which have been published by Routledge. The author is interested in receiving constructive criticism for the improvement of any future editions of this work and can be emailed at bcr@unimelb.edu.au.
### Abbreviations

> produces, gives rise to  
< is derived from  
acc. accusative  
dat. dative  
f. feminine  
gen. genitive  
lit. literally; literary  
m. masculine  
n. neuter  
nom. nominative  
pl. plural  
pron. pronounced  
sing. singular  
s.o. someone  
s.t. something
German does not contain many sounds that are difficult for English speakers to pronounce; ch, r and ü will probably prove the hardest to conquer, but even these are soon mastered with practice.

The only reliable way of committing sounds to paper is via the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), but only those studying linguistics as an academic discipline are likely to have the IPA at their disposal and for this reason it is not referred to here. This means, however, that phrasing such as ‘compare the vowel in tray’ and ‘compare the vowel in lot’ has its limitations. Those English words may well vary in the way they are pronounced depending on where in the English-speaking world you live. Every care has been taken to make comparisons which are valid regardless of whether you speak British or American English, although the author is a speaker of the former, but then the Australian variant thereof. For this and numerous other reasons there is, of course, no substitute for getting assistance from a native speaker, keeping in mind, however, that German is spoken over a very large area by European standards and thus shows considerable regional variation in the way it is pronounced. Some attempt to cover the prime regional differences in pronunciation is made in 1.5. What should help in describing the sounds of German without being able to resort to the IPA is the fact that this book has, after all, been written for the intermediate level and so this chapter is seldom going to have to serve the needs of the raw beginner. It is assumed the vast majority of readers will already have some idea of how German is pronounced.

### 1.1 Vowels

Most vowels in German have both a short and a long variant. Clearly distinguishing between the two is very important. In German spelling two
consonants after a vowel will normally indicate it is short (e.g. Kamm ‘comb’), whereas only one consonant indicates it is long (e.g. kam ‘came’) (see 2.1).

**a**  
- a is pronounced short in words like Hand, Mann and statt – compare the vowel in ‘but’.
- a is pronounced long in words like kam, Vater and zahlen – compare the vowel in ‘father’.

**ä**  
- ä is pronounced short in words like lässt, kälter and Männer – compare the vowel in ‘bed’. It is identical to German short e.
- ä is pronounced long in words like gäge, Hähne and Väter – compare the vowel in ‘hair’.

**e**  
- e is pronounced short in words like Bett, Henne and Sekt – compare the vowel in ‘bed’. It is identical to German short ä.
- e is pronounced even shorter in words like Beruf, Tante and zahlen where it is unstressed – compare the vowel in the first syllable of ‘believe’ or the last syllable of ‘wooden’. In all words ending in e like Schule and Kassette the e must be pronounced and not merely dropped as in ‘cassette’. It is similar to the second syllable in ‘rubber’ as it is pronounced in British English.
- e is pronounced long in words like lesen, Planet and Tee – compare the vowel in ‘tray’, but keep it pure, i.e. do not diphthongize it at all.

**i**  
- i is pronounced short in words like bitter, ich and Pilz – compare the vowel in ‘pit’. In very few words such as Liga and wider i is pronounced long – compare the vowel in ‘read’.

**ie**  
- ie is always pronounced long, e.g. liegen, lieh and sie – compare the vowel in ‘fee’.

**o**  
- o is pronounced short in words like Loch, Schloss and Stollen – compare the vowel in ‘lot’.
- o is pronounced long in words like Floh, rot and Ton – compare the vowel in ‘post’, but keep it pure, i.e. do not diphthongize it at all.

**ö**  
- ö is pronounced short in words like Löcher, Töchter and zwölf – compare the vowel in ‘bird’, but keep it short.
- ö is pronounced long in words like Flöte, Löhne and schön – compare the vowel in ‘bird’ but with the lips as rounded as you can make them.
\( \text{u} \)  
\( \text{u} \) is pronounced short in words like **Butt**, **Truppe** and **Zunge** – compare the vowel in ‘put’.  
\( \text{u} \) is pronounced long in words like **Buch**, **Fuß** and **gut** – compare the vowel in ‘food’ but with less lip rounding. Make sure you clearly distinguish between this sound and long \( \text{ü} \). This sound is commonly pronounced too short by English speakers.

\( \text{ü} \)  
\( \text{ü} \) is pronounced short in words like **fünf**, **Flüsse** and **Pfütze** – compare the vowel in ‘too’ but make it shorter and with the lips as rounded and tightened as you can make them, as if trying to whistle.  
\( \text{ü} \) is pronounced long in words like **fühlens**, **Füße** and **trübe** – compare the vowel in ‘food’ but make it longer and with more lip rounding and tightening, as if trying to whistle.

### 1.2 Diphthongs

German has only three diphthong sounds, i.e. \( \text{ei} \), \( \text{au} \) and \( \text{eu} \). English has quite a few more.

- **ei**  
  \( \text{ei} \) in words like **Blei**, **Stein** and **Verleih** is identical to the vowel in ‘fight’.
- **ai**  
  \( \text{ai} \) in words like **Hain**, **Laib** and **Mai** is identical in pronunciation to **ei** and occurs in very few words.
- **au**  
  \( \text{au} \) in words like **aus**, **Auto** and **Traum** is very similar to the vowel in ‘house’.
- **eu**  
  \( \text{eu} \) in words like **euch**, **Feuer** and **heute** is identical to the vowel in ‘boy’.
- **äu**  
  \( \text{äu} \) in words like **enttäuschen**, **Kräuter** and **Schläuche** is identical to **eu**.

### 1.3 Consonants

There are few problems lurking here for English speakers.

- **b**  
  \( \text{b} \) in words like **Bein**, **Krabbe** and **loben** is identical to that in ‘bed’. At the end of a word as in **ab**, **Lob** and **ob** a \( \text{b} \) is always devoiced, i.e. it is pronounced as a ‘p’.
- **c**  
  \( \text{c} \) in words like **Cicero** and **Mercedes** (both foreign words) is pronounced like a German \( \text{z} \), i.e. as ‘ts’.
**Pronunciation**

**ch** in words like *Bach, Loch, Buch* and *rauchen* (i.e. after *a, o, u* and *au*) is pronounced as in Scottish ‘loch’. The Germans call this the *ach-Laut*, a hard sound.

**ch** in words like *Blech, ich, lächeln, Schlüche, Löcher, Bücher, welche, manche* and *durch* (i.e. after *e, i, ä, au, ö, ü* as well as the consonants *l, n* and *r*) is a softer sound than when it follows *a, o, u* and *au*, i.e. it is pronounced with the tongue curved, hugging both the soft and hard palates. The Germans call this the *ich-Laut*, a soft sound. It must be clearly distinguished from the more guttural *ach-Laut*. The two **ch** sounds can alternate within variations of the same word when it is inflected, e.g. *Buch* (with the *ach* sound) and *Bücher* (with the *ich* sound).

The combination **chs** is pronounced like English ‘x’, e.g. *sechs, Dachs, Fuchs*. Compare *sechs* (6) with *sechzehn* (16) and *sechzig* (60) where **ch** is pronounced as in *Blech* above.

The diminutive ending **-chen** is also pronounced with this soft variant of **ch**.

**ch** at the beginning of loanwords is pronounced like 1) English ‘k’, 2) English ‘sh’ or 3) soft German **ch**, depending on the source language, e.g. 1) *Chaos, Chlor, Charakter*; 2) *Chance, chauvinistisch, Chef*; 3) *Chemie, China*.

**ck** **ck**, found in the middle and at the end of words, is pronounced ‘k’, e.g. *lecker, Fleck*.

**d** **d** in words like *denken* and *Feder* is pronounced as in English.

At the end of a word as in *Glied, Gold* and *Hand* a **d** is always devoiced, i.e. it is pronounced as a ‘t’.

**f** **f** in words like *Frosch, Pfeffer* and *Schiff* is pronounced as in English.

**g** **g** at the beginning or in the middle of words, as in *Gang, gießen* and *fliegen*, is pronounced as in English.

At the end of a word as in *Tag, Teig* and *Zug* a **g** is always devoiced, i.e. it is pronounced as a ‘k’. However, the ending **-ig** is pronounced like German **ich**, e.g. *König* and *lustig* (see 1.5).

**h** **h** at the beginning of a words, as in *Haus, Horn* and *Hut*, is pronounced as in English. After a vowel it is not pronounced but simply serves to show that the vowel is long, e.g. *Floh*. 
seen, Schuhe (see 2.1). Sometimes this h is superfluous to pronunciation but spelling requires it, e.g. sieh and sie are pronounced the same, as are liehst (< leihen 'to lend') and liest (< lesen 'to read').

j
j is pronounced 'y', e.g. Jahr, jeder, Joch.
j in French loanwords is pronounced like the 's' in 'leisure', e.g. Journalist.

k
k is pronounced as in English, e.g. Katze, Klasse, kommen.

l
l in all positions is pronounced as in 'light' never as in 'well', i.e. it is never a 'thick l', e.g. Lohn, Licht, wählen, wohl.

m
m is pronounced as in English, e.g. Mann, Lämmer, Lehm.

n
n is pronounced as in English, e.g. nein, Tonne, zehn.

ng
ng is always pronounced as in 'singer', never as in 'finger', e.g. Finger, lang, Sänger, Zeitung.

p
p is pronounced as in English, e.g. Penner, Lippe, kaputt. At the beginning of a word, where it is rare, it is lightly aspirated, as in English.

pf
pf is pronounced as the spelling suggests, i.e. both the p and the f are articulated, but this can be hard for English speakers at the beginning of a word, e.g. Pfeffer, Tropfen, Kopf (see pf under 1.5).

ph
ph is still used in some loanwords and is pronounced as an 'f', e.g. Photograph, Philosophie.

q
q always occurs in combination with u, as in English, and together they are pronounced ‘kv’, e.g. Qualität, Quelle, Quadratmeter.

r
In most of the German-speaking region r before a vowel is pronounced by slightly trilling the uvula in the back of your throat, but there are areas where, and individuals who, pronounce it by trilling their tongue against their alveolar ridge, i.e. the ridge of gum behind the top teeth, as in Italian. Either way r must be trilled, which usually means most English speakers have trouble with this sound, e.g. Reh, reißen, Brot, schreiben.
After a vowel an r is vocalized, i.e. it is pronounced as a vowel, e.g. in er, mir and Uhr you pronounce the vowel as you
Pronunciation

...would expect it to be pronounced and follow it by ‘uh’, as in the colloquial question form ‘huh?’; i.e. air-uh, mee-uh, oo-uh.
The common ending -er is simply pronounced ‘uh’; alternatively you could say it resembles the second syllable in ‘teacher’, but imagine this being spelt ‘teacha’, e.g. Schuster (shoos-tuh). The ending -ern is pronounced ‘airn’, not trilling the r, e.g. wandern (vundairn).

Note how -er and -e differ in pronunciation at the end of words: Mütter/Feuer (with ‘uh’), but Hütte/Treue (with the vowel in the second syllable in British English ‘rubber’; in American English this final ‘r’ is pronounced, but not in British English).

s

s at the beginning and in the middle of a word is pronounced ‘z’, e.g. sollen, lesen, Gänse. s at the end of a word is pronounced ‘s’, e.g. es, Gans, Glas. The spelling ss is always pronounced ‘s’ too, e.g. Flüsse, Guss, schoss.

ß

ß, which only occurs in the middle and at the end of words, is always pronounced ‘s’, e.g. bloß, reißen, schießen. ß indicates that any vowel preceding it is long (see 2.5).

sch

sch is pronounced ‘sh’, e.g. Schule, fischen, Tisch.

sp

sp at the beginning of a word is pronounced ‘shp’, e.g. spät, Spaten, Spatz. This is also the case in compounds and derived words where the sp is still seen as being at the ‘beginning’ of the word, e.g. Aussprache, verspätet (< spät).
In the middle of a word, however, sp is pronounced ‘sp’, e.g. lispeln, Wespe.

st

There are parallels here with the way sp is pronounced. At the beginning of a word it is pronounced ‘sht’, e.g. Stadt, stehen, stoßen. This is also the case in compounds and derived words where the st is still seen as being at the ‘beginning’ of the word, e.g. Ausstoß, Großstadt, verstehen (< stehen).
In the middle and at the end of a word, however, st is pronounced ‘st’, e.g. Gast, gestern, bist.

t

t is pronounced as in English, e.g. Tag, rot, bitte. At the beginning of a word it is aspirated, as in English.
In French loanwords ending in -tion, t is pronounced ‘ts’, e.g. Nation, national.

tsch

tsch is pronounced like ‘tch’ in ‘butcher’, e.g. Deutsch,
**Dolmetscher, Quatsch.** It only occurs at the beginning in foreign words, e.g. *Tschechien, tschüs.*

**v**  
*v* is pronounced ‘f’ in true German words, e.g. *Vater, von, Volk.* At the beginning of loanwords *v* is pronounced as in English, e.g. *Vase, Veteran, Video, Violine.*

*v* occurs at the end of some loanwords, in which case it is pronounced ‘f’ (i.e. it is devoiced), but when *v* is no longer in final position, it is pronounced ‘v’, e.g. *aktiv, passiv,* but *aktive.*

**w**  
*w* is pronounced ‘v’, e.g. *Wasser, wir, Wurm.*

**x**  
*x,* which is rare in German, is always pronounced ‘ks’, e.g. *nix, Xylophon.*

**y**  
*y* is pronounced the same as long ü, e.g. *typisch, Zylinder, zynisch.*

**z**  
*z* is pronounced ‘ts’, e.g. *Polizei, zählen, zittern.* Sometimes it occurs together with *t* but the pronunciation is still ‘ts’, e.g. *Glotze, Platz, Spritze.*

### 1.4 Stress

As a general rule the first syllable of a German word bears the stress, e.g. *ankommen, Bruder, Rathaus, Wörterbuch.*

The verbal prefixes be-, emp-, ent-, er-, ge-, ver- and zer-, which are also found in nouns derived from verbs, are never stressed (compare the stress in ‘believe’, ‘release’, ‘forgive’ in English), e.g. *Bezug, empfehlen, entkommen, erreichen, gestehen, Verkauf, zerbrechen.* Some additional verbal prefixes are not stressed, e.g. *durchsuchen, vollenden, widersprechen,* while others are, e.g. *anrufen, ausgehen, wiedersehen* (see separable and inseparable verbs 10.9.1 to 10.9.3).

Many foreign loanwords, usually of French origin, stress the final syllable as in the source language, e.g. *Agent, Akzent, Bäckerei, kaputt, Partei, Pelikan, Philosoph, Planet, Satellit, Student.* Loanwords ending in *e* stress the second last syllable, e.g. *Forelle, Garage, Kassette, Kusine.*

Verbs ending in -ieren, mostly derived from French, are also stressed on the second last syllable, e.g. *buchstabieren, renovieren, studieren.*
1.5 Regional variants

As German is spoken over a very wide area and in several countries, there is great variety in regional pronunciation. Some of these variations are considered standard, not dialect; only these variants are dealt with here.

In the north of Germany long ä is pronounced ‘eh’, i.e. the same as German long e, and thus the distinction between gäbe/gebe and nähme/nehme, for example, is not made.

In the north of Germany many long vowels in closed syllables (i.e. those ending in a consonant) are pronounced short, e.g. Glas, Tag, Zug.

In the north of Germany final g is pronounced like German ch (both ich- and ach-Laut, depending on the preceding sound), e.g. Tag, Téig, Weg, zog, Zug.

In verbs before the endings -t and -te/-ten etc. g is also pronounced in this way, e.g. liegt, gesagt, legte, sagte; in standard German the g in these words is automatically pronounced ‘k’ due to the influence of the following t.

In the north the ending -ung is often pronounced ‘oonk’, e.g. Zeitung, Rechnung.

Over large areas of northern and central Germany pf at the beginning of a word is likely to be pronounced ‘f’, e.g. Pfeffer, Pfund. If you are having trouble pronouncing pf in such words, simply say Feffer and Fund and no one will even notice you are not saying pf.

In southern Germany and Austria, sp and st are pronounced ‘shp’ and ‘sht’ in all positions, not just initially, e.g. bist, Australien, Wespe.

The reverse can occur in the far north of Germany where sp and st might be pronounced ‘sp’ and ‘st’ in all positions, e.g. Stadt, spät.

In the south of Germany and in Austria k, p and t are commonly pronounced in a way that makes them barely distinguishable from g, b and d respectively, e.g. kaufen > gaufen, Parade > Barade, trinken > drinken.
Chapter 2

Spelling

Generally speaking, German is written as it is pronounced, each spelling having only one possible pronunciation and each pronunciation being written in only one way. There are very few exceptions to this, and they are dealt with here.

2.1 Indicating vowel length

Vowel length is inconsistently represented in German spelling – compare the following where all words contain the same long a, e, o or u sound respectively: Saal, Stahl, Tal; Tee, Mehl, beten; Boot, Lohn, bot; Fuß, Schuh.

H is commonly used after a vowel to indicate that the vowel is long, although this indication is usually superfluous, e.g. mahlen (to grind) and malen (to paint), sich (look) and sie (she/they). This is called in German a Dehnungs-h (< dehnen ‘to lengthen, stretch’).

In a minority of words a, e and o are doubled to show they are long, e.g. Saal, Beet, Boot. Otherwise a single consonant following a, e and o usually indicates that those vowels are long, e.g. Tag, Gen, Kot, Vater, beten, boten. Conversely, a short vowel is usually followed by two or more consonants, which may be the same or different, e.g. Männer, Pommern, sprechen, fanden, Stadt, Wespe.

2.2 Use of the Umlaut

German only uses one diacritic, the Umlaut. It appears in printed matter as two dots over the vowel, but in handwriting is best written as two short strokes, not dots. Umlauts are only possible on the vowels a, o, u and the diphthong au, which are all vowel sounds pronounced in the back of the
mouth. For historical reasons, in derived forms of words containing a, o, u or au, the vowel is brought further forward and/or higher in the mouth and this is reflected in the spelling by umlauting these vowels. This is best illustrated by comparing the singular with the plural of certain nouns, e.g. Bach > Bäche, Loch > Löcher, Buch > Bücher, Bauch > Bäuche (compare ‘goose > geese’). In the examples given, the change in vowel also causes a change in pronunciation of the ch from the hard to the soft variant.

2.3 Use of capital letters

All nouns are capitalized, e.g. Bruder, Mutter, Sofa.

Adjectives of nationality are not capitalized, but nouns are, e.g. eine deutsche Frau (a German woman), Sie ist Deutsche (She is a German).

‘To write with a capital/small letter’ is expressed by the verbs groß- and kleinschreiben, e.g.

**Er kann Deutsch; hier wird ‘Deutsch’ großgeschrieben.**
He speaks German; here ‘Deutsch’ is written with a capital letter.

**Beethoven ist ein bekannter deutscher Komponist; hier wird ‘deutsch’ kleingeschrieben.**
Beethoven is a well-known German composer; here ‘deutsch’ is written with a small letter.

Because, for historical reasons, modern German uses the word for ‘they’ as the polite form of address, to distinguish between ‘they/them/to them/their’ and ‘you/to you/your’ the latter are all written with a capital letter, i.e. Sie/Ihnen/Ihr.

2.4 Use of the hyphen

Compounds are seldom hyphenated as in English, where we often vacillate between using a hyphen in a given compound, writing it as two words or writing it as one word, e.g. Wohnzimmer (lounge-room, lounge room, loungeroom), Küchentür (kitchen door), spottbillig (dirt cheap). There is no limit to how long such compounds can be in German, e.g. Gerichtsberichterstatter (legal correspondent, lit. court report compiler).

When a hyphen is used, as in an Sonn- und Feiertagen (on Sundays and holidays) and auf- und zumachen (to open and shut), it is understood that
this stands for an Sonntagen und Feiertagen and aufmachen und zumachen and saves repeating the second part of the compound.

2.5 The new spelling

German reformed its spelling (Rechtschreibung) in 1998 for the first time in almost a hundred years. The reform, called die Rechtschreibreform, has aroused a great deal of controversy. Although all government agencies, schools and publishers adhere to the new recommendations, many individuals refuse to do so, and of course anything published prior to 1998 is in the old spelling. The differences are, however, minimal.

By far the most important change to the spelling in 1998 was in the use of ß, called either scharfes s or ess tset (i.e. German for ‘sz’, as the symbol is derived from a long s and a z in old German printing and handwriting).

Under the new rules ß is only used after long vowels and diphthongs, e.g. schießen, Spaß, stoßen, draußen, fleißig, scheußlich. Thus the spellings Schoß and schoss, Fuß and Fluss indicate to the reader that there is a difference in vowel length. Sometimes ß and ss alternate within a word family, indicating the length of the vowel, e.g. schießen (to shoot), schoss (shot).

Under the old spelling ß was used after long vowels, as now, but also at the end of words, regardless of the length of the preceding vowel, and before the verbal endings -t and -te/-ten, e.g. schoß, Fluß, paßt, mußte are now all schoss, Fluss, passt, musste.

The only other important spelling change relates to the use of capital letters where a certain inconsistency had evolved. It was decided that any word that can possibly be perceived as a noun should be capitalized, something which had previously been somewhat inconsistent, e.g. auf deutsch > auf Deutsch, heute abend > heute Abend.

The other changes are so trivial as not to warrant mention here, but if at times you see inconsistencies in spelling (e.g. wieviel/wie viel ‘how much’, radfahren/Rad fahren ‘to cycle’), the chances are you are witnessing the differences between the old and the new spelling. Just take note whether your dictionary, any other textbook you are consulting or book you are reading was printed pre or post-1998. This book does of course observe the new spelling.
2.6 The alphabet

The combination ‘eh’ in the pronunciations given below approximates the vowel in English ‘bay’ but without any tendency to diphthongize – it is a pure long vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>ah</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>en</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>beh</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>tseh</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>peh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>deh</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>koo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>eh</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>ef</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>geh</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>teh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hah</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>oo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ee</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>fow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>jot</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>veh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>kah</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>iks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>el</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>üpsilon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>em</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>tset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If spelling out a word with an Umlaut in it, read the letters as follows: kämpft – kah, air, em, peh, ef, teh. This is more usual than kah, ah-Umlaut, em, peh, ef, teh, which is however also possible.

Letters of the alphabet are neuter, e.g.

**Das I im Wort Voigtländer wird nicht ausgesprochen.**

The i in the word Voigtländer is not pronounced.
Generally speaking, German punctuation does not differ greatly from that of English. It is only the comma which is used somewhat differently but a couple of other punctuation marks can differ slightly from English usage too. Only those punctuation conventions that differ from English are described here.

### 3.1 Commas

Commas are determined by grammar in German, not by the writer feeling a pause is appropriate, as is so often the case in English, e.g.

**Er wird aber innerhalb von vierzehn Tagen zurückkommen.**  
(aber = however)  
He will, however, return within a fortnight.

In German you must always insert a comma between an independent and a dependent clause, however short they are, e.g.

**Ich will das Buch nicht übers Internet kaufen, obwohl es dort billiger wäre.**  
I don’t want to buy the book over the internet although it would be cheaper there.

**Er wusste, dass ich es war.**  
He knew that it was me.

When joining two independent (main) clauses by means of a coordinating conjunction, a comma must be inserted between the two if the second clause has its own subject, e.g.

**Er fliegt heute nach London, aber er kommt morgen schon zurück.**  
He’s flying to London today but (he) is returning tomorrow.
But if the subject of the first clause also serves as the subject of the second clause, which is a possible stylistic variant in both German and English, you cannot separate that second finite verb from its subject by means of a comma, e.g.

**Er fliegt heute nach London aber kommt morgen schon zurück.**
He’s flying to London today but (he) is returning tomorrow.

The post-1998 spelling rules have introduced two small changes here. Just with the coordinating conjunctions **oder** (or) and **und** (and) a comma has been made optional even if the subject is mentioned (see 11.1), e.g.

**Meine Festplatte funktioniert nicht mehr richtig(,) und ich muss sie reparieren lassen.**
My hard disk is no longer working properly and I have to get it repaired.

The other small change since 1998 is that a comma is now also optional before an infinitive clause (see 11.3) consisting of more than **zu** plus an infinitive, e.g.

**Er hat probiert(,) ihr zu helfen.**
He tried to help her.

No comma was ever required when the infinitive clause was not expanded beyond **zu** plus an infinitive, e.g.

**Er hat probiert zu helfen.**
He tried to help.

When a subordinate clause precedes a main clause in a complex sentence, the comma is an indispensable reading tool to indicate which verb belongs to which clause, e.g.

**Wenn er mir damals geholfen hätte, hätte ich ihm gestern mit dem Umzug geholfen.**
If he had helped me back then, I would have helped him with moving house yesterday.

But even when the order of the clauses is reversed, a comma must of course be used, e.g.

**Ich hätte ihm gestern mit dem Umzug geholfen, wenn er mir damals geholfen hätte.**
I would have helped him with moving house yesterday, if he had helped me back then.
In English in such cases it is up to the writer to decide if the sentence is long enough to require a comma for the sake of clarity or not and no two people’s comma style is the same. This is definitely not the case in German.

### 3.1.2 Commas with relative clauses

A comma must be placed at both the beginning and the end of a relative clause (see 7.6), clearly delineating it from the main clause in which it is embedded, e.g.

Der Kuli, mit dem ich den Scheck unterschreiben wollte, war leer.
The biro/ballpoint I wanted to sign the cheque with was empty.

### 3.2 Colons with direct speech

When speech is reported by means of clauses such as ‘he said’, ‘she wrote’ etc., a colon is used in German where in English we use a comma, e.g.

Sie schrie: „Wach auf!“
She shouted, ‘Wake up.’

But if the direct speech precedes the verb of reporting, a comma is used, not a colon, e.g.

„Mach schnell“, sagte er.
‘Hurry up,’ he said.

„Der Vertrag ist unterzeichnet worden“, berichtete der Journalist.
‘The contract has been signed,’ the journalist reported.

### 3.3 Inverted commas/quotation marks

German places the first inverted commas or quotation marks of a set on the line and the second where it is in English, e.g.

„Mach schnell“, sagte er.
‘Hurry up,’ he said.
3.4 Exclamation marks

An exclamation mark is used after exclamations, as in English, e.g.

**Um Gottes Willen!**
For god's sake.

It is also used after imperatives in German, although you may find some inconsistency in use here, e.g.

**Setz dich!**
Sit down.

**Komm nach dem Abendbrot zu uns rüber, wenn du Lust hast(!)**
Come over to us after dinner if you feel like it.

Traditionally an exclamation mark was used at the beginning of a letter after the name of the addressee, and the first word in the next line was capitalized, as were all familiar pronominal forms (i.e. Du, Dich, Dir, Dein), e.g.

**Lieber Franz!**

**Ich habe Deinen Brief vom 11. März dankbar erhalten.**
Dear Franz,
Thank you very much for your letter of the 11th of March.

These days a comma has replaced the exclamation mark but the first word of the next line is not capitalized as in English, because the first word in the letter is regarded as the beginning of the sentence, and all forms related to du are written with small letters when not at the beginning of a sentence, e.g.

**Lieber Franz,**

**ich habe deinen Brief vom 11. März dankbar erhalten.**
German is a so-called inflectional language. Inflections are grammatical endings. The plural endings of nouns (books, children, oxen) and the endings of the various persons of the verb (I go, he goes) are examples of inflectional endings that both English and German share. Case is another form of inflection. At its simplest level case is the distinction between the subject (the nominative case), the direct object (the accusative case) and the indirect object (the dative case, i.e. ‘to’) in a sentence, e.g.

**Der Vater hat seiner Tochter eine Email geschickt.**
The father (nom.) sent an email (acc.) to his daughter (dat.).

This sentence shows case being applied to nouns, der, seiner and eine being the indicators not only of the gender of their respective nouns, but also of their case, something which English can only indicate with word order. But look at this variant:

**Seiner Tochter hat der Vater eine Email geschickt.**

This sentence means the same as the former although the connotation is different, i.e. it was his daughter he sent an email to and not anyone else. The forms seiner and der clearly indicate who is doing the sending (the subject or nominative) and who the email is being sent to (the indirect object or dative). One advantage of case, as this simple example illustrates, is that it can give the speaker a greater choice of word order.

English has only preserved separate case forms in its pronouns, i.e. ‘I/me’, ‘he/him’, ‘she/her’, ‘we/us’, ‘they/them’; only in the second person, i.e. ‘you/you’, is no distinction made any more, although previously it was ‘thou/thee’ and ‘ye/you’. English uses ‘me’, ‘him’, ‘her’ etc. in both the accusative and the dative, e.g.
Ich habe ihn zu Hause besucht und ihm einen Scheck für €55 gegeben.
I visited him (acc.) at home and gave him (dat.) a cheque (acc.) for 55 euros.

The difference between ‘who’ and ‘whom’, which is now waning in English, is also an example of case, i.e. nominative versus accusative/dative, e.g.

Who lives here?
Wer wohnt hier?

Who(m) did you visit in Berlin?
Wen hast du in Berlin besucht?

Who did you give the cheque to? / To whom did you give the cheque?
Wem hast du den Scheck gegeben?

The fact that ‘whom’ is fast dying out in English provides a living (just) example of the fate of case distinctions in English. But the point is that these distinctions are still very much alive and kicking in German and contribute to what English speakers find difficult about learning German. But once you have got your mind around the concept of case, it is extremely logical and getting it right is one of the great satisfactions of learning German.

In German, case endings don’t just apply in the above instances. Adjectives take case endings, and verbs and prepositions can require that the pronouns and nouns that follow them take either the accusative, dative or genitive case, e.g.

Unser alter (nom. m.) Nachbar hat einen sehr netten (acc. m.) Sohn.
Our elderly neighbour has a very nice son.

Er hat mir geholfen. (The verb helfen takes a dative object.)
He helped me.

Meine Frau ist böse auf mich. (böse auf + acc. = angry with)
My wife is angry with me.

4.1 Case endings on nouns

In a few specific cases the nouns themselves take case endings, not just the determiners (i.e. indefinite and definite articles, possessives etc.) standing in front of them as illustrated above. These few cases need to be noted.
All masculine and neuter nouns take an -(e)s ending in the genitive case in the singular; monosyllabic nouns may take -es rather than simply -s in more formal sounding language, but you will never be wrong if you simply add -s, except if the noun itself ends in s, ß or z, when -es must be used, e.g.

- **der Name seines Sohn(e)s**  
  his son’s name

- **der Anfang des Gebets**  
  the beginning of the prayer

- **die Größe des Kreuzes**  
  the size of the cross

In very formal written style and in older texts monosyllabic masculine and neuter nouns in the dative singular optionally take an -e ending, e.g.

- **hinter dem Baume**  
  behind the tree

- **auf dem Meeresgrunde**  
  at the bottom of the sea

- **Dem Deutschen Volke**  
  To the German people (written on the façade of the Reichstag)

Generally speaking, these days this ending is limited to standard expressions, e.g.

- **zu Hause**  
  at home

- **im Grunde genommen**  
  basically

- **im Laufe der Zeit**  
  in the course of time

Nouns of all three genders must add an n in the dative plural if the plural form does not already end in -n, e.g.

- **in den Zimmern** (< pl. Zimmer)  
  in the rooms

- **unter den Bäumen** (< pl. Bäume)  
  under the trees

- **von den Mädchen** (< pl. Mädchen, i.e. plural already ends in n)  
  from the girls
4.2 Other uses of the nominative case

A noun used in isolation (i.e. not as part of a sentence) is assumed to be in the nominative case, e.g.

_Ein toller Film, nicht?_  
A great film, don’t you think?

If an isolated noun is in fact the object of an otherwise unuttered sentence, as in abbreviated answers to questions, the accusative or dative may be required, e.g.

_A: Was liest du? B: Einen Roman._  

_A: Wem hast du das Geld gegeben? B: Dem Sohn._  
A: Who did you give the money to? B: The son.

People are addressed in the nominative case, e.g.

_Was ist passiert, mein lieber Freund?_  
What (has) happened, my dear friend?

Complements of the following so-called copula verbs are in the nominative case; copula verbs take the nom. case both before and after them: _bleiben_ (to remain, stay), _scheinen_ (to seem, appear), _sein_ (to be) and _werden_ (to become), e.g.

_Er ist ein sehr guter Lehrer._  
He is a very good teacher.

_Er wird ein ausgezeichneter Athlet._  
He’s becoming an excellent athlete.

_Er scheint ein ausgezeichneter Athlet zu sein._  
He seems to be an excellent athlete.

4.3 Other uses of the accusative case

Expressions such as _guten Morgen, guten Tag_ and _gute Nacht_ are in the accusative case as they are theoretical contractions of something like _Ich wünsche dir einen guten Morgen_. Similarly with _guten Appetit_ (bon appétit), _herzlichen Glückwunsch_ (congratulations) and _recht_ vielen _Dank_ (thanks very much).
The date at the top of a letter stands in the accusative case, although this is not always evident, depending on the format applied, e.g.

*den 8. (achten) September 2006 or 8. September 2006*
*8th September 2006*

Many adverbial expressions denoting a particular point in time or a period of time take the acc. case (see 4.4 and 9.4 for expressions of time in the gen. case), e.g.

**Sie kommt erst nächsten Montag zurück.**
She won’t be back till next Monday.

**Ich habe den ganzen Tag auf dich gewartet.**
I waited all day for you.

For prepositions that take the acc. case see 12.1 and 12.3.

### 4.4 The genitive case

The genitive case usually indicates possession and very often equates to the use of ‘s and s’ in English or to ‘of’, e.g.

**die Kinder meines Lehrers**
my teacher’s children

**die Spitze dieses Berges**
the top of this mountain (‘this mountain’s top’ sounds strange as it is inanimate)

The ending -s occurs in German too as a sign of possession but it is limited to personal names and no apostrophe is used with it, e.g.

**Ottos Schwester/Marias neue Küche/Thomas Manns Romane**
Otto’s sister/Maria’s new kitchen/Thomas Mann’s novels

Forms like **Frau Emsbergers Hund** (Mrs Emsberger’s dog) and **Herrn Müllers Büro** (Mr Müller’s office) are also possible.

An expression such as ‘my aunt’s dog’ cannot be expressed in this way in German but must be rephrased as ‘the dog of my aunt’ where ‘of my aunt’ is in the genitive case, i.e. **der Hund meiner Tante**.

In more formal sounding German the -s ending is applied to the names of towns and countries but in everyday German is replaced by **von**, e.g.
die Hauptstadt Deutschlands/Deutschlands Hauptstadt/die Hauptstadt von Deutschland
Germany’s capital city/the capital city of Germany
in der Nähe Berlins/in der Nähe von Berlin
near (lit. in the vicinity of) Berlin

The adverbial expression eines Tages (one day) takes the gen. case (see 4.3 and 9.4 for expressions of time in the acc. case). The adverbial expressions morgens/vormittags (in the morning), nachmittags (in the afternoon), abends (in the evening), nachts (during the night), as well as tagsüber (during the day), have all been derived from genitive forms but are no longer seen as such; compare ‘of a morning/evening’ etc. in English.

For prepositions that take the gen. case see 12.4.

The genitive of the interrogative pronoun ‘who’ is ‘whose’ or wessen in German (see 7.5) and the genitive of ‘whose’ as a relative pronoun is dessen or deren (see 7.6).

4.5 Other uses of the dative case

Envelopes addressed to men, where the title used is Herr, require the dative of Herr to be used because what is implied is ‘To Mr. X’, e.g. Herrn Joachim Polenz (see n-nouns 6.1.1.h).

A considerable number of commonly used verbs take an indirect object, i.e. dative object, where in English the same verbs take a direct object (see 10.4.4 for use of these verbs in the passive), e.g.

danken (to thank s.o.)

Ich danke dir/Ihnen.
Thank you. (a stylistic variant of danke schön)

helfen (to help s.o.)

Die Krankenschwester hat dem Patienten nicht geholfen.
The nurse did not help the patient.

Other common verbs that take a dative object are:

antworten (to answer s.o.)
begegnen (to bump into s.o.)
beiwohnen (to be present at)
danken (to thank)
**Nouns in apposition**

Look at the following sentence:

**Ludwig Schmollgruber, früherer Direktor dieser Schule, ist heute in einem Autounfall umgekommen.**

Ludwig Schmollgruber, this school’s former headmaster, died today in a car accident.

The expression *früherer Direktor dieser Schule* is said to stand in apposition to *Ludwig Schmollgruber*; it offers, between commas, additional information about the noun that precedes it. This is significant in German as a noun standing in apposition to another must be in the same case as the noun to which it refers, e.g.

**Ich habe Ludwig Schmollgruber, den früheren Direktor dieser Schule, gekannt.**

I knew Ludwig Schmollgruber, this school’s former headmaster.
Ich hatte es Herrn Schmollgruber, dem früheren Direktor
dieser Schule, schon zigmal gesagt.
I had told Mr Schmollgruber, this school’s former headmaster, umpteen
times.

4.7 Order of cases in paradigms

So many aspects of German grammar are presented in the form of
paradigms, as for example the following paradigm for the definite article:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>das</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>den</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>das</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>des</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>des</td>
<td>der</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>den</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not all books use this order of the cases when setting out such paradigms.
NAGD is the traditional order in the Anglo-Saxon world and the one
adhered to here. In Germany, where there is a long tradition of learning
Latin and Greek at school, the order NGDA is traditionally used, as this
is the order most usual in the learning of classical languages. This order
is also the explanation for the cases commonly being called in German
der erste, zweite, dritte and vierte Fall respectively, e.g. Direktor steht im
dritten Fall – Direktor is in the dative case (in the last example in 4.6).
Some textbooks for beginners adopt the order NADG, which is the order
in which you normally learn the cases, as the genitive is usually regarded as
the most difficult case to learn as well as being the least common.

Some textbooks also apply the order MNF to genders instead of the usual
MFN when setting out paradigms like the above. This can be very confusing
so be on the lookout for variation in this respect from book to book.
Articles is the collective name for the definite and the indefinite article. The definite article in English is ‘the’ and the indefinite article is ‘a/an’; compare ‘the man’, a particular or definite man, and ‘a man’, meaning any man, not a particular one. These articles vary in German according to gender, number and case, as illustrated in 5.1.

Not only articles but other words too can stand in front of nouns and these also vary according to gender, number and case, e.g. dieser (this/these), jeder (each/every), jener (that/those), mancher (many a), solcher (such), welcher (which), as well as all the possessive pronouns (e.g. mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer, Ihr/ihr). All these words, together with the articles, are referred to collectively as determiners. Depending on the determiner before the noun, any adjective that follows it will also be subject to a variety of endings (see 8.1.1 to 8.1.3), the variation in ending of the determiner and a following adjective being perhaps the most difficult aspect of German to master. Tricky and all as this might be to learn and apply, there is an underlying logic and system to it all. You need to persevere until the penny drops.

5.1 The definite article

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>das</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>den</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>das</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>des</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>des</td>
<td>der</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>den</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The definite article in English, ‘the’, could not be simpler whereas the German equivalents are considerably more complicated. Whenever you utter the word ‘the’ in German you have to ask yourself firstly whether
the following noun is masculine, feminine, neuter or plural and secondly whether that noun is the subject (nom.), direct object (acc.) or indirect object (dat.) or shows possession (gen.); only then can you decide which of the sixteen words above is appropriate for the context. To say there are sixteen forms is of course a slight exaggeration, as several of the forms occur more than once; this is possible because context always makes it clear what is intended. Let’s take den, for example:

**Die Frau hat den Mann in der Stadt getroffen.** (masculine acc.)
The woman met the man in the city.

**Der Schulleiter hat den Eltern einen Brief geschickt.** (plural dat.)
The headmaster sent the parents a letter.

As you should learn every new German noun together with its definite article, you will know from the outset that a noun is masculine, feminine or neuter, which is more or less a matter of rote learning, and thus all you have to think about is what case is required in a given context. If you understand the general make-up of a sentence, i.e. who is doing what to whom, deciding on the appropriate case is easy.

The **der/die/das** paradigm given here fulfils several functions in German, all of which are clear from the context, but the variety of meanings it can have can be confusing to the beginner. In addition to rendering the definite article, it can also translate ‘that/those’ (see 5.1.1), ‘he/she/it’ (see 7.1.5), as well as render the relative pronoun (see 7.6).

### 5.1.1 Use of the definite article

Although generally speaking the definite article is used in German as in English, there are a number of cases where it is required in German but not in English. Some cases are situations where its use can be defined, others are individual idioms.

a) It is always used before a large variety of abstract nouns:

- **die Geschichte**  
  history
- **der Himmel**  
  heaven
- **die Hölle**  
  hell
- **das Leben**  
  life
die Liebe  love
der Mensch  mankind
die moderne Kunst  modern art
die Natur  nature
der Tod  death

Die Natur ist zu bewundern.
Nature is to be admired.

der längste Krieg in der Geschichte
the longest war in history

So ist das Leben.
Such is life.

b) It is always used before names of towns and countries when they are preceded by an adjective:

das schöne Berlin
beautiful Berlin

im damaligen Deutschland
in Germany at that time

c) It is always used before seasons:

Der Frühling ist die schönste Jahreszeit.
Spring is the nicest season.

Sie war im Winter in Australien.
She was in Australia in winter.

d) It is always used with meals after prepositions:

nach/vor dem Abendessen
after/before dinner

beim/zum Frühstück
at/for breakfast

e) It is always used before the names of streets:

Ich wohne in der Friedrichstraße.
I live in Friedrich Street.
Es ist im Langenkampsweg passiert.
It happened in Langenkamp Road.

f) The names of just a few countries require the definite article (compare ‘the Ukraine’, ‘the Sudan’):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>masculine</th>
<th>feminine</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>der Irak</td>
<td>die Schweiz</td>
<td>die Niederlande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der Iran</td>
<td>die Slowakei</td>
<td>die Philippinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der Libanon</td>
<td>die Türkei</td>
<td>die Vereinigten Staaten/die USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der Sudan</td>
<td>die Ukraine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use the appropriate case of the definite article where a preposition is involved, e.g.

Er wohnt schon seit Jahren in der Türkei/im Irak.
He has been living in Turkey/Iraq for years.

Wir fliegen morgen in die Vereinigten Staaten.
We are flying to the United States tomorrow.

The same applies to the name of a few regions:

das Elsass (Alsace)
der Kosovo
die Lombardei (Lombardy)
die Normandie
die Toskana (Tuscany)

g) It is used in various idioms together with prepositions where the article is not required in English, e.g.

in die Stadt/in der Stadt to town/in town
in die Kirche/in der Kirche to church/in church
in die Schule/in der Schule to school/at school
Die Schule beginnt um… School begins at…
im Gefängnis in jail
an der Universität at university
in der Praxis in practice
über/unter dem Meeresspiegel above/below sea level
Other determiners inflected like der/die/das

A context may require you to refer to ‘this man’, rather than ‘the man’, or alternatively ‘that man’ (jener Mann), ‘every man’ (jeder Mann) or ‘which man’ (welcher Mann). Each of these words is a determiner which takes the same endings as der/die/das. Here are the paradigms for dieser and welcher, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>dieser</td>
<td>diese</td>
<td>dieses</td>
<td>diese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>diesen</td>
<td>diese</td>
<td>dieses</td>
<td>diese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>dieses</td>
<td>dieser</td>
<td>dieses</td>
<td>dieser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>dieser</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>diesen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>welcher</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches</td>
<td>welche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>welchen</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches</td>
<td>welche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>welches</td>
<td>welcher</td>
<td>welches</td>
<td>welcher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>welchem</td>
<td>welcher</td>
<td>welchem</td>
<td>welchen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Even in English ‘this’ changes to ‘these’ before a plural noun and ‘that’ to ‘those’, which gives you some taste for what German is doing here, e.g. dieses Haus (this house) > diese Häuser (these houses).

Jener (that/those) is a word seldom encountered in speech or even in natural writing. There are two more usual ways of expressing ‘that/those’ in German. The first way is by using der/die/das but with emphasis, e.g.

Den Namen kenne ich nicht. (commonly starting with the emphasized word)
I don’t know that name.
Wir wohnen in dem Haus. (spacing can indicate stress in written German)
We live in that house.

The second way of expressing ‘that/those’ is simply by using dieser and dispensing with the distinction we make in English between ‘this’ and ‘that’:

**Diesen Namen kenne ich nicht.**
**Wir wohnen in diesem Haus.**

There are two other determiners which take the endings of der/die/das but these are most frequently encountered in the plural, i.e. mancher (some, many a), solcher (such), e.g.

**Manche Leute mögen es so.**
Some people (= many a person) like it like that.

**Solche Leute kann ich nicht ausstehen.**
I can’t stand such people/people like that.

The most frequent way of expressing ‘such a’ is solch ein, where solch is invariable and ein is declined (see 5.3).

### 5.3 The indefinite article

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>ein</td>
<td>eine</td>
<td>ein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>einen</td>
<td>eine</td>
<td>ein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>eines</td>
<td>einer</td>
<td>eines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>einem</td>
<td>einer</td>
<td>inem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The indefinite article in English, ‘a’ or ‘an’, is very simple. The German equivalent, ein, not only means ‘a/an’ but also ‘one’. The numeral ‘one’, when counting, is eins, e.g. eins, zwei, drei (see 13.1), but when followed by a noun ein in both senses takes all the above endings, the distinction in meaning between ‘one’ and ‘a/an’ being made by stressing the former, and the ending being determined by the gender and case of the noun, e.g.

**Sie hat nur einen Sohn.**
She has only one son.

**Sie hat einen Sohn.**
She has a son.
There is of course no fourth column with plural forms in the above paradigm, unlike for der/die/das, because by definition ‘a/an’ cannot be followed by a plural noun.

5.3.1 Omission of the indefinite article

The indefinite article is sometimes omitted in German where it is used in English.

a) It is usually omitted after the preposition als, e.g.

   Er hat seine Untertasse als Aschenbecher benutzt.
   He used his saucer as an ashtray.

b) It is commonly omitted after the preposition ohne (see 12.1), e.g.

   Er ist ohne Hut in dieser Hitze spazieren gegangen.
   He has gone for a stroll in this heat without a hat.

c) It is omitted before professions after copula verbs (see 4.2) but is always inserted when the profession is preceded by an adjective:

   Er ist Lehrer.
   He is a teacher.

   Er ist ein sehr guter Lehrer.
   He is a very good teacher.

   Er ist Vater geworden.
   He has become a father.

d) It is omitted before nationalities after copula verbs (see 4.2) but is always inserted when the nationality is preceded by an adjective:

   Er ist Deutscher/Berliner.
   He is a German/Berliner.

   Er ist ein waschechter Deutscher/Berliner.
   He is a genuine German/Berliner.
e) It is omitted in various standard expressions:

- **Das ist schade.** That’s a pity.
- **Kopfschmerzen haben** to have a headache
- **Auge um Auge** an eye for an eye
- **Es ist Viertel vor/nach zwei.** It is a quarter to/past two.

### 5.4 Other determiners inflected like *ein*

There are a number of determiners that take the same endings as *ein*, namely *kein* (no, not a/any) and the possessive adjectives *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, *unser*, *euer* and *ihr*, several of which sound like *ein*, as you can see, e.g.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>meinen</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>mein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>meines</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meines</td>
<td>meiner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>meinem</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>inem</td>
<td>menen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The paradigm for these determiners has a fourth, plural column which is not present in the *ein* paradigm (see 5.3).

### 5.5 Indefinite pronouns used as determiners (see 7.7.1 and 8.1.4)

When followed by a plural noun the pronouns *alle* (all), *andere* (other), *eine* (some), *mehrere* (several), *viele* (many), *verschiedene* (various/different) and *wenige* (few) are used as determiners which are inflected for case, e.g.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>all/viele Städte</th>
<th>all/viele Städte</th>
<th>aller/vieler Städte</th>
<th>allen/vielen Städten</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
<td></td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.1 Gender of nouns

All German nouns belong to one of three genders: masculine, feminine or neuter. It is imperative you learn nouns together with the appropriate definite article (i.e. der, die or das, see 5.1), as the ramifications of belonging to one of these three genders pervade German. Without knowing the gender of a noun you will not, for example, be able to correctly say ‘the table/door/house’, ‘a table/door/house’, ‘a big table/door/house’, ‘this table/door/house’, ‘which table/door/house’, or ‘his table/door/house’ as ‘the’, ‘a’, ‘big’, ‘that’, ‘this’, ‘which’ and ‘his’ will most likely vary as ‘table’ is masculine, ‘door’ is feminine and ‘house’ is neuter, e.g.

- der Tisch/die Tür/das Haus
- ein Tisch/eine Tür/ein Haus
- ein großer Tisch/eine große Tür/ein großes Haus
- dieser Tisch/diese Tür/dieses Haus
- welcher Tisch/welche Tür/welches Haus
- sein Tisch/seine Tür/sein Haus

You will even be faced by nouns not preceded by a determiner like der/die/das, which indicate the gender of the noun, but where you simply need to know intuitively what gender the noun is, e.g. frische Milch (fresh milk) and kaltes Bier (cold beer), where the knowledge that Milch is feminine and Bier is neuter determines the ending on the preceding adjective.

Learning the gender of each noun is one of the most difficult aspects of learning German but one you will have to master. There are a few rules that will give you some assistance in learning the gender of a noun but they only cover a minority of nouns.
A small minority of German nouns are neuter, possibly no more than 10 per cent, so if you have no idea of the gender of a noun and are forced to guess, it would not be wise to opt for neuter. Feminine nouns, as the rules given below will indicate, are often recognizable as feminine due to their ending. Nouns that end in -e are overwhelmingly feminine. So few neuter nouns end in -e that they can be rote learnt, e.g. das Auge (eye), das Ende (end), das Interesse (interest). Masculine nouns that end in -e are weak nouns (also called n-nouns, see 6.1.1.h) and nearly all of them refer to masculine beings and thus their masculine gender is obvious, e.g. der Russe (Russian). Otherwise you can assume that any noun ending in -e is feminine, e.g. die Decke (ceiling), die Katze (cat), die Tapete (wallpaper).

Sometimes the meaning of a noun serves as an aid to gender. The word for a ‘painter’, der Maler, must be masculine as it refers to a male being. The word for a ‘bear’, der Bär, is also masculine as it refers to a large, strong animal, whereas a ‘mouse’ is die Maus; but this does not help much as the word for a ‘horse’ is das Pferd. But there is a sub-rule here that can help: if there is a separate word for the male and female of a given animal, e.g. ‘stallion’ and ‘mare’, those words will be masculine and feminine respectively but the generic word, ‘horse’, will often be neuter, e.g. das Huhn/der Hahn/die Henne (chicken/rooster/hen), das Schwein/der Eber/die Sau (pig/boar/sow). But this rule has its limits too as a ‘duck’ is die Ente and a ‘goose’ is die Gans, but that is because, as in English, the name of the female of the species is the generic term for the species.

Sometimes gender is determined by the form of the word; certain endings will always be masculine, feminine or neuter, e.g. die Gelegenheit (opportunity) and die Geschwindigkeit (speed) because all nouns that end in -heit or -keit are feminine (see below).

The rules for gender that follow are far from ideal but they are as good as it gets.

When nouns are joined together to form a compound noun (see 2.4 and 6.8) the gender of the new word is the same as that of the last element in the compound, e.g. die Zeit + der Plan > der Zeitplan (schedule), das Haus + die Tür > die Haustür (front door).
6.1.1 Rules for masculine gender

Nouns in the following categories are masculine:

a) All professions and nationalities that refer to male beings, e.g. der Bäcker (baker), der Lehrer (teacher), der Philosoph (philosopher), der Amerikaner (American), der Deutsche (German).

b) The names of large wild animals, e.g. der Elefant (elephant), der Löwe (lion), der Tiger (tiger). Large domestic animals are often neuter but the male of the species, where a separate word exists, is masculine, e.g. der Entenich (drake), der Hengst (stallion), der Stier (bull).

c) The four seasons, e.g. der Frühling, der Sommer, der Herbst, der Winter.

d) The days of the week, e.g. der Sonnabend, der Sonntag, der Montag etc.

e) The months of the year, e.g. der Januar, der Februar, der März etc.

f) All nouns derived from verbs beginning with an inseparable prefix where the -en of the infinitive has been dropped, e.g. der Besuch (visit, <besuchen ‘to visit’), der Versuch (attempt, <versuchen ‘to try’).

g) The names of many rivers (those that aren’t masculine are feminine, never neuter), e.g. der Inn, der Lech, der Main, der Rhein (Rhine); der Amazonas (Amazon), der Ganges, der Nil (Nile).

h) Weak masculine nouns or n-nouns
   Nearly all the following nouns denote masculine beings but don’t end in -e, but, like those that do end in -e, all are weak masculine nouns and also take -en in the singular in all cases but the nominative. All nouns ending in -arch, -ant, -anz, -ent, -enz, -ist, -it, -krat, -nom, -ot and -soph belong here.

| der Agent | der Despot | der Idiot | der Mensch |
| der Akrobat | der Diplomat | der Journalist | der Monarch |
| der Analphabet | der Dozent | der Kaffer* | der Musikant |
| der Architekt | der Elefant | der Kakerlak | der Nachbar* |
| der Asiat | der Favorit | der Kamerad | der Nachfahr |
| der Astronom | der Fink | der Kandidat | der Narr |
| der Bandit | der Fotograf | der Katholik | der Obelisk |
| der Bär | der Fürst | der Klient | der Päderast |
| der Bauer* | der Geck | der Kommandant | der Patriarch |
| der Bayer* | der Graf | der Konsonant | der Patriot |
| der Bürokrat | der Gymnasiast | der Kosak | der Philosoph |
| der Chaot | der Held | der Kosmonaut | der Pilot |
| der Christ | der Herr* | der Leopard | der Pirat |
| der Demokrat | der Hirt | der Mandant | der Polizist |
The following masculine nouns in -e take -ens in the genitive but otherwise behave like other weak masculine nouns, taking -en in all cases except the nom. in the singular, as well as the plural. These are the only weak nouns ending in -e that do not refer to masculine beings:

**der Buchstabe** **der Funke** **der Glaube** **der Wille** **der Drache** **der Gedanke** **der Name**

### 6.1.2 Rules for feminine gender

Nouns in the following categories are feminine:

a) All nouns ending in -in, which is added to the masculine form of professions and nationalities to render the female of the species, e.g. die Lehrerin, die Philosophin, die Amerikanerin.
b) All nouns ending in -heit and -keit, all of which express abstract concepts, e.g. die Gelegenheit (opportunity), die Gemütlichkeit (cosiness).
c) All nouns ending in -ung, e.g. die Übung (exercise), die Zeitung (newspaper).
d) All nouns of French origin ending in -ie, -ik, -ion, e.g. die Biologie, die Musik, die Station.
e) Those rivers that are not masculine (see 6.1.1.g) are feminine, never neuter, e.g. die Donau (Danube), die Elbe, die Isar, die Oder, die Weser; die Seine, die Themse (Thames).
6.1.3 Rules for neuter gender

Nouns in the following categories are neuter:

a) All diminutives ending in -chen and -lein regardless of the gender of the original noun, e.g. das Hündchen (< der Hund ‘puppy’), das Püppchen (< die Puppe ‘little doll’).

b) All nouns derived from infinitives, e.g. das Essen (eating/food), das Kochen (cooking), das Lesen (reading).

c) The names of all cities and countries (except the very few notable masculine and feminine ones, see 5.1.1.f) are neuter. You are not normally aware of this, e.g.

Er wohnt in Warschau/Polen.
He lives in Warsaw/Poland.

But if the name of a town or country is qualified in some way, usually by an adjective, the definite article must be used and that must be neuter, e.g.

das wunderschöne Venedig
wonderful Venice

im damaligen Deutschland
in Germany at that time

das Rom von heute/von Cäsar
the Rome of today/of Caesar

6.2 Pluralization of nouns

Deciding on how to pluralize a German noun is a bothersome aspect of the language, as plurals can be formed in any one of nine ways, i.e. by adding -e, -er, -n, -en, or by simply doing nothing to the noun. There is a direct connection between the gender of a noun and the way it forms its plural – only certain endings apply to certain genders. Some generalizations apply, even if there are many exceptions to these rules, e.g.

a) A monosyllabic masculine noun forms its plural by adding -e (Baum > Bäume), although some add just -e (Schuh > Schuhe).

b) A feminine noun takes -en (Tür > Türen), but some take -e (Stadt > Städte).
c) A monosyllabic neuter noun takes -er (Haus > Häuser), but some take
-e (Jahr > Jahre).

Nearly all German nouns belong to one of the following five groups. Learn the
following by heart and you will seldom have to deal with exceptions to these
rules. The system applied below is as follows. Each group starts with the rule,
e.g. do not change in the plural. Then follow the definitions of the nouns that
belong in that group and then the common exceptions to the rule are listed.
The lists of exceptions are not complete, but they do contain by far the most
common nouns you are likely to encounter. In some instances the lists contain
not the exceptions to the rule, but the nouns to which the rule in question
applies, as the number of nouns concerned is finite. A little time spent now
getting this under your belt will save you a great deal of floundering later.

6.2.1 GROUP 1: do not change in the plural
1 Masculine and neuter nouns ending in -el, -en and -er, e.g. der Beutel,
der Balken, das Fenster
2 Diminutives in -chen and -lein, e.g. das Männchen, das Büchlein
3 Neuter nouns beginning with Ge- and ending in -e, e.g. Gebäude
4 Two feminine nouns, die Mutter and die Tochter, which become
Mütter and Töchter

These masculine nouns do not take an ending but do take an Umlaut in
the plural:

| der Acker | der Faden | der Laden | der Schaden |
| der Apfel  | der Garten | der Mangel | der Schnabel |
| der Boden  | der Graben | der Mantel | der Vater |
| der Bogen  | der Hammer | der Nagel | der Vogel |
| der Bruder | der Kasten | der Ofen | Also: das Kloster |

6.2.2 GROUP 2: add -e or -e (if the vowel is not umlautable)
1 Masculine nouns of one syllable (as well as a few bisyllabic nouns),
e.g. Baum, Stuhl
2 Some neuter nouns of one syllable (listed here); none take an Umlaut
except das Floß
3 Some feminine nouns of one syllable (listed here)
4 Masculine and neuter nouns ending in -ich, -ig, -ing, -nis, -sal, e.g. der
König, der Jüngling, das Gefängnis (NB: Those ending in -nis go -nisse
in the plural)
Masculine and neuter nouns beginning with Ge- and ending in a stressed syllable, e.g. das Gebet (see Group 3 for some neuter exceptions)

These masculine nouns do not take an Umlaut in the plural:

- der Arm
- der Flur
- der Mond
- der Ruf
- der Tag
- der Besuch
- der Hund
- der Ort
- der Schuh
- der Dom
- der Monat
- der Punkt
- der Stoff

These neuter nouns do not take an Umlaut (no neuter nouns in Group 2 do except das Floß):

- das Bein
- das Haar
- das Pult
- das Schwein
- das Tier
- das Wort*
- das Boot
- das Jahr
- das Schaf
- das Spiel
- das Tor
- das Ding
- das Pferd
- das Schiff
- das Stück
- das Werk

*Also found in Group 3 but with a different meaning, i.e. Worte is a collective referring to what someone said, e.g. Gottes Worte (the words of God).

These are the most common feminine nouns in this group but there are more:

- die Angst
- die Gans
- die Luft
- die Nuss
- die Wurst
- die Axt
- die Hand
- die Lust
- die Schnur
- die Bank
- die Haut
- die Macht
- die Stadt
- die Braut
- die Kraft
- die Maus
- die Sucht
- die Faust
- die Kuh
- die Nacht
- die Wand
- die Frucht
- die Kunst
- die Not
- die Werkstatt

### GROUP 3: add -er or -er (if the vowel is not umlautable)

1. A few masculine nouns (listed here)
2. Some neuter nouns (listed here)
3. Masculine and neuter nouns ending in -tum, e.g. der Reichtum, das Altement

These are the masculine nouns that don’t end in -tum:

- der Geist
- der Mann
- der Strauch
- der Gott
- der Mund
- der Wald
- der Leib
- der Rand
- der Wurm
This is a sample of the neuter nouns but there are more:

- das Amt
das Feld
das Haus
das Loch
das Bad
das Gehalt
das Huhn
das Maul
das Band
das Geld
das Kalb
das Nest
das Bild
das Gesicht
das Kind
das Rad
das Buch
das Gespenst
das Lamm
das Schloss
das Dach
das Glas
das Land
das Tal
das Dorf
das Glied
das Licht
das Volk
das Ei
das Grab
das Lied
das Wort*

* Also found in Group 2 but with a different meaning, i.e. Wörter refers to individually words, not words as a collective, e.g. das Wörterbuch (dictionary).

### 6.2.4 GROUP 4: add -n or -en

1. Most feminine nouns (i.e. all those not listed in Group 2)
2. Weak masculine nouns, also called n-nouns (i.e. all those ending in -e plus those listed here, see 6.1.1.h)
3. A few neuter nouns (listed here)

These masculine nouns are weak although they do not end in -e:

- der Bär
der Graf
der Präsident
der Bauer
der Held
der Prinz
der Dozent
der Herr
der Soldat
der Elefant
der Kamerad
der Spatz
der Fink
der Mensch
der Student
der Fürst
der Nachbar
der Vorfahr

These are the few neuter nouns in this group:

- das Auge
das Hemd
das Interesse
das Bett
das Herz
das Ohr
das Ende
das Insekt

### 6.2.5 GROUP 5: add -s

1. Foreign words ending in -a, -i, -o and -u, e.g. das Sofa, das Taxi, das Auto, das Känguru
2. English loanwords ending in -y, e.g. das Baby, das Hobby, das Handy
3. Several English and French loanwords: der Park, der Scheck, die Bar, die Band, das Hotel, das Modem, das Restaurant
6.3 Diminutization of nouns

There are two ways of forming the diminutive in German, by adding either -chen or -lein to a noun while umlauting the vowel in the root syllable if it can take an Umlaut, e.g. das Haus > das Häuschen, der Tisch > das Tischlein. These days -lein tends to sound a little poetic or archaic. In practice -chen is much more commonly used than -lein, so stick to -chen yourself. All diminutized nouns, whatever their original gender, become neuter once they take either of these endings.

Although in theory any (usually only) monosyllabic noun can be diminutized in either of these ways, it is best not to use diminutives you have not seen or heard before; they are seldom necessary. If you want to say ‘a small card’, for example, that can be just as well expressed by eine kleine Karte as by ein (kleines) Kärtchen.

Although the diminutized form generally expresses a smaller example of whatever the noun is, there are numerous recognized diminutive forms that render a new item of vocabulary, e.g. a Fräulein is not a small Frau but an unmarried woman, Mädchen (diminutive of archaic die Maid ‘maiden’) is the usual word for girl, and a Brötchen is a breadroll, not a small loaf of bread. ‘Male’ and ‘female’ of animals are rendered by the words Männchen and Weibchen, which theoretically can also mean ‘little man’ and ‘little woman’, but the latter is a good example of the added semantic connotations that can occur when a noun is diminutized and why you should be careful with diminutives because Weibchen can also mean ‘the little woman’ (i.e. the wife) or a ‘dumb broad’. The young of animals are often diminutive forms, e.g. Kätzchen (kitten), Wölfchen (wolf cub).

In southern German the endings -l, -el, -erl and -ele are commonly heard and occasionally written, e.g. das Mäde(r)l, das Backhendl (= Backhähnchen ‘roast chicken’), das Dirndl(kleid) (traditional female costume in the south). In Switzerland the ending -li is used in spoken German, e.g. das Müesli (muesli), das Maidli (girl), das Tischli (table).

Using a diminutive ending does not prevent you from also using an adjective like klein (small) or winzig (tiny) with the noun in question if you want to impart how minute something is, e.g.

Meine Tante hat ein kleines Ferienhäuschen auf Helgoland.
My aunt has a really small holiday house on Heligoland.

Diminutives are particularly common in fairytales, whose titles frequently contain a diminutive too, e.g. Aschenbrödel/Aschenputtel (Cinderella),
Dornröschen (Sleeping Beauty), Hänsel und Gretel (Hansel and Gretel), Rotkäppchen (Little Red Riding Hood), Rumpelstilzchen (Rumpelstiltskin).

6.4 Names of towns

6.4.1 Names of German towns

The names of a few well-known German-speaking towns differ in German from English. Where the stress differs from English below, ' precedes the stressed syllable:

- Basel Bâle
- Hameln Hamlin
- Han'nover Hanover
- 'Koblenz Coblence
- Köln Cologne
- München Munich
- Nürnberg Nuremberg
- Wien Vienna
- Zürich Zurich

6.4.2 Names of foreign towns

The names of many cities throughout the world differ in German from English; these are the most important; sometimes the difference is merely one of spelling. Some are spelt as in English, and are thus not given here, but are pronounced differently in German, e.g. Pa'rís, Stockholm (pron. shtockholm).

- Ant'werpen Antwerp
- A'then Athens
- Bagdad Baghdad
- Belgrad Belgrade
- Breslau Wroclaw
- Brügge Bruges
- Brüssel Brussels
- Bukarest Bucharest
- Damaskus Damascus
- Danzig Gdansk
### Inhabitants of towns

The male inhabitant of a town is derived by adding -er to the name, e.g. Berlin > der Berliner, and the female inhabitant is derived by adding -in to this, e.g. die Berlinerin. The plurals are die Berliner and die Berlinerinnen.
respectively. The adjectival form of such place names also ends in -er and is indeclinable, e.g. der Kölner Dom, der Münchner Hauptbahnhof.

6.5 Names of countries (see Appendix 1)

6.5.1 Inhabitants of countries

Nationalities are derived from the names of countries, as in English, e.g. Norwegen/der Norweger (Norway/the Norwegian). All nationalities follow one of two patterns – they either end in -er or -e. Male inhabitants ending in -er do not change in the plural and the females add -in with a plural in -innen, e.g. England (England), der Engländer (the Englishman), die Engländer (the Englishmen/the English [m. & f.]), die Englännderin (the English woman), die Englännderinnen (the English women/the English [f.]). Male inhabitants ending in -e are n-nouns, as are Ungar and Zypriot; the female equivalent ends in -in and is of course not weak, e.g. Schweden (Sweden), der Schwede (the Swede), die Schweden (the Swedes), die Schwedin (the Swedish woman), die Schwedinnen (the Swedish women).

There is only one exception to these two patterns for the deriving of nationality, namely ‘the German’. Der Deutsche is an adjectival noun, the female equivalent consequently being die Deutsche (see 6.7). The difference between der Deutsche and der Schwede, as illustrated here, does not immediately meet the eye, but put the indefinite article in front of them and you see the difference, e.g. ein Schwede but ein Deutscher. The same happens with viele, for example: viele Schweden (many Swedes) but viele Deutsche (many Germans); viele Schwedinnen (many Swedish women) but viele Deutsche [Frauen] (many German women).

6.6 Feminizing agents

German, unlike English, is inherently sexist because of the existence of grammatical gender. You cannot get around the fact in German that Maler (painter) is masculine, whereas its English equivalent can refer to a person of either sex who paints. The female form of professions, like that of nationalities (see 6.5.1), must be derived from the male form. To do so you simply add -in to the male form, e.g. der Maler > die Malerin, der Journalist > die Journalistin, der Sekretär > die Sekretärin. Where the male form is an n-noun ending in -e, the -e is replaced by -in, e.g. der Beamte >
die Beamtin (civil servant). There are a few traditionally female professions where this has led to alternative forms, e.g. die Krankenschwester (nurse [f.]), der Krankenpfleger (nurse [m.]), which of course can give rise to die Krankenpflegerin.

If referring to a mixed group of males and females of a given profession or nationality, the masculine form traditionally prevails, e.g.

**Alle Lehrer an dieser Schule kriegen nächsten Montag frei.**
All teachers at this school are getting next Monday off.

**Alle Polen kaufen gern in Deutschland ein.**
All Poles like shopping in Germany.

In this politically correct age it is most usual when addressing mixed groups of a given profession to use both the male and female forms and to mention the females first, e.g.

**Liebe Lehrerinnen und Lehrer** (at the beginning of a speech)
Dear teachers

In writing, the following inclusive form is used with professions: LehrerInnen. The above introduction to a speech might well have been written Liebe LehrerInnen in a letter, but if read aloud this must be read as Liebe Lehrerinnen und Lehrer.

See indefinite pronouns (7.7) for a further example of masculine forms predominating in German due to grammatical gender.

### 6.7 Adjectival nouns

An adjectival noun is a noun formed from an adjective. This is done first and foremost with adjectives referring to male and female beings. You can express, for example, ‘a blind man’ in one of two ways, either as ein blinder Mann or as ein Blinder, where the adjective is capitalized and the noun is understood. Likewise with ‘a blind woman’, i.e. eine blinde Frau or eine Blinde. And in the plural ‘blind people’ can be expressed as Blinde, where ‘people’ is understood. But being in fact adjectives where the following noun is implied, these adjectival nouns are inflected like adjectives, which means that all the above examples may change when preceded by the definite article, e.g. der Blinde (the blind man), die Blinde (the blind woman), die Blinden (the blind). In the plural we do something similar in English, i.e. the blind, the poor, the living etc. Such nouns are derived
from a limited number of adjectives on the whole. Quite a number of such adjectives are derived from past participles (marked with an asterisk) and some from present participles (marked with two asterisks); here is a representative list:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>der/die Alte</td>
<td>the old man/woman/person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Arme</td>
<td>the poor man/woman/person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Angeklagte*</td>
<td>the accused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Angestellte*</td>
<td>the employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Anwesende**</td>
<td>the person present, bystander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Arbeitslose</td>
<td>the unemployed man/woman/person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der Beamte†</td>
<td>the official</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Bekannte*</td>
<td>the acquaintance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Deutsche²</td>
<td>the German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Erwachsene*</td>
<td>the adult/grown-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Fremde</td>
<td>the stranger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Gefangene*</td>
<td>the prisoner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Kranke</td>
<td>the sick man/woman/person (patient)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Reiche</td>
<td>the rich man/woman/person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Reisende**</td>
<td>the traveller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Schuldige</td>
<td>the guilty man/woman/person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Tote</td>
<td>the dead man/woman/person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der/die Verwandte*</td>
<td>the relative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1 The feminine of this word is not an adjectival noun but a normal noun ending in -in, e.g. die Beamtin (female official).

2 Of all nationalities only ‘the German’ is expressed by an adjectival noun (see 6.5.1).
6.7.1 Neuter adjectival nouns

There is another small category of adjectival nouns that are neuter. These do not refer to people, like those above, but usually refer to abstract concepts, e.g. das Gute/Schlechte/Blöde daran (the good/bad/stupid thing about it). Such neuter adjectival nouns commonly follow the impersonal pronouns alles, etwas, nichts, viel and wenig, weak adjectival endings (see 8.1.1) being used after alles and strong adjectival endings (see 8.1.3) after all the others, e.g.

Ich habe schon alles Mögliche probiert.
I've already tried everything possible.

Auf wiedersehen. Alles Gute.
Goodbye. All the best.

Das ist nichts Neues/etwas Besonderes.
That's nothing new/something special.

Er hatte viel/wenig Positives zu berichten.
He had a lot of/few positive things to report.

Such forms occasionally occur in other contexts too, e.g. Gehacktes (minced meat). The ending varies according to the determiner in front of it because, remember, it has the meaning of a noun but the form of an adjective, e.g.

Dieses Gehackte riecht nicht gut./Ich muss noch Gehacktes fürs Abendessen kaufen.
This mince doesn't smell right./I still have to buy mince for dinner.

6.8 Compound nouns

As mentioned under 2.4, German does not hyphenate compound nouns but is happy to join the words together, even though this may lead to what seem like ridiculously long words, e.g. Balkonsonnenbader (balcony sunbather), Hupverbotsbeachter (someone who observes the prohibition on tooting). When nouns are joined together in this way, they take the gender of the final element, e.g. die Küche (kitchen), der Tisch (table), der Küchentisch (kitchen table).

The above examples also illustrate a complication in forming such compounds for which it is unfortunately not possible to formulate prescriptive rules. Balkonsonnenbader is formed from the nouns Balkon +
Sonne + Bader, Küchentisch from Küche + Tisch and Hupverbotsbeachter from Hup + Verbot + Beachter. Note the medial n in the first two and the medial s in the last example. These sounds are inserted in countless such compounds. Native speakers can hear where they are required but it is very difficult to formulate rules that will be of help to non-native speakers. About the only thing that can be said with a reasonable degree of certainty is that if a word ends in -e, it will take an n when another word is joined to it, as illustrated in the two examples above. As for where s is required in compounds, only this can be said: when a noun ends in -heit/-keit or -ung, an s must be inserted, e.g. Gelegenheitsarbeite (casual work), Zeitungszar (media baron). On rare occasions it is -es- that is inserted, e.g. Jahreszeit (season), Meeresspiegel (sea level). Otherwise, as far as s is concerned, you will simply have to observe and copy.

For compounds like der Rotwein (red wine), where German prefixes the adjective to the noun rather than inflecting it as an attributive adjective, see 8.1.5.1.
As pronouns by definition stand in for nouns and nouns are subject to case (see 4.1), so are pronouns. The following sorts of pronouns occur in both English and German: personal pronouns (e.g. I, me), possessive pronouns (e.g. my/mine), reflexive pronouns (e.g. myself), demonstrative pronouns (e.g. this, that), relative pronouns (e.g. the man who/that ...), interrogative pronouns (e.g. who, which, what), indefinite pronouns (e.g. someone, several). Each category of pronoun has its own complexities and they are looked at individually in this chapter.

### 7.1 Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns consist of subject pronouns (nominative case), object pronouns (accusative case) and indirect object pronouns (dative case). This is the full paradigm of forms, but the three categories are dealt with separately below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>ich</th>
<th>du</th>
<th>er</th>
<th>sie</th>
<th>es</th>
<th>wir</th>
<th>ihr</th>
<th>Sie</th>
<th>sie</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>ich</td>
<td>du</td>
<td>er</td>
<td>sie</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>wir</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>Sie</td>
<td>sie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>mich</td>
<td>dich</td>
<td>ihn</td>
<td>sie</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>uns</td>
<td>euch</td>
<td>Sie</td>
<td>sie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>mir</td>
<td>dir</td>
<td>ihm</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihm</td>
<td>uns</td>
<td>euch</td>
<td>Ihnen</td>
<td>ihnen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 7.1.1 Subject or nominative pronouns

The subject pronouns are:

- ich (I), du (you), er (he), sie (she), es (it), wir (we), ihr (you), Sie (you), sie (they)

Ich is referred to as the first person singular, du as the second person singular (familiar), er/sie/es as the third persons singular, wir as the first
person plural, ihr as the second person plural (familiar), Sie as the second person singular and plural (polite) and sie as the third person plural.

### 7.1.1.1 Second person subject pronouns

Sie meaning ‘you’ (polite) is derived historically from sie meaning ‘they’ (it is akin to the so-called royal ‘we’). It is capitalized to distinguish it from sie in writing. No distinction between the two is made in speech where intonation and context always make the distinction clear, e.g. Wohnen Sie schon lange in Deutschland? (Have you lived in Germany long?). Theoretically, in speech this could mean ‘Have they lived in Germany long?’ but the circumstances of the conversation would make it obvious what is intended.

You will notice that German has three words for ‘you’, du, ihr and Sie. English is peculiar in having just one word. Du is used when addressing children, animals, relatives and close friends, i.e. people whom you normally address by their first or given name. God is also addressed as du in prayer. Du is regarded as the familiar form of address.

The plural of du is ihr, e.g.

- **Gehst du jetzt nach Hause, Peter?**
  - Are you going home now, Peter?

- **Gehst ihr jetzt nach Hause?**
  - Are you (more than one person) going home now?

In colloquial English you often hear things like ‘you all’, ‘youse’, ‘you guys’ or ‘the two/three of you’ where the speaker is attempting to fill the void of a plural form of ‘you’ in the language. These are all expressed by ihr or Sie (see below) in German.

When addressing strangers or acquaintances with whom you are not (yet) on Christian name terms, Sie, which is used for both singular and plural, is the appropriate form; it is regarded as the polite or non-familiar form of address, e.g.

- **Gehen Sie jetzt nach Hause, Frau Meyer?**
  - Are you going home now, Mrs Meyer?

Normally the use of a given name and du go hand in hand, but there can be situations, for example in the workplace, where you know someone well as a colleague but do not regard the person as a close friend, so you might use a combination of the given name and Sie, e.g.
Sylvia, würden Sie bitte so nett, mir hiermit zu helfen?
Sylvia, would you be so kind as to help me with this please?

The point at which a friendship changes from a Sie to a du basis is a culturally significant moment. As an English speaker you will find it difficult to judge when the appropriate time has come to suggest to an acquaintance that you feel the friendship has progressed to this point, so leave it up to the German to make the move, especially if s/he is significantly older than you. The ice may be broken by the person saying something like, Sag mal du zu mir! (Call me du) or Ich heiße übrigens Gerhard (By the way, my name is Gert; in other words, use my first name from now on and thus also stop using the Sie form).

There are gradations of familiarity which can require the one form of address or the other. The above description will cover the majority of situations you are likely to find yourself in, but, for example, if you were in conversation with someone you didn’t know, and were thus using the Sie form, and the conversation turned nasty and abusive, the politeness of Sie might well be dropped and du resorted to in combination with suitable expletives, e.g.

Du Schwein/Arschloch!
You pig/arsehole!

These are subtleties of the use of du, ihr and Sie which you will become more comfortable with after some exposure to the living language. Even Germans can be a bit unsure of the appropriate form of address in certain situations. If you have already learnt another European language in which such distinctions are made, you will find the concept very similar, if not identical, in German.

7.1.1.2 Use of man to render ‘you’

Be careful when rendering a ‘you’ that does not refer directly to the person you are talking to, but means in fact ‘one’; in such a situation German uses ‘one’, i.e. man (see 7.7.2 and 10.4.7), e.g.

Wenn man weniger isst, nimmt man nicht zu.
If you eat less you don’t put on weight.

Compare the following that is addressed directly to someone:

Wenn du weniger essen würdest, würdest du nicht zunehmen.
If you ate less, you would not put on weight.
7.1.1.3 Use of subject pronouns where English uses object pronouns

In contexts like ‘Who’s that at the door?’ where the most natural sounding answer in English is ‘Me’, an object pronoun, German requires a subject or nominative pronoun, i.e. ich. The alternative ‘It’s me’ (as no one really ever says ‘It is I’, as purists might insist) is in German Ich bin es; likewise ‘It’s him/us/them’ etc. is Er ist es./Wir sind es./Sie sind es etc.

Similarly, in comparatives of the sort ‘He is taller than me’, which is everyday English for the puristic ‘He is taller than I (am)/you (are)’, German can only express it in the latter way, i.e. Er ist größer als ich/du. Likewise, ‘He is just as tall as me/you’, Er ist genau so groß wie ich/du.

In English, object pronouns are colloquially used in the following idiom, but in German only subject pronouns are possible:

Wenn ich du/er ware, …
If I were you/him … (= If I were he …)

Where a pronoun is uttered in isolation in response to a question, you have to imagine the unuttered sentence of which it is theoretically part and use the appropriate case form, e.g.

A: Who helped him? B: Me (= I [did]).

A: Wem hat er das Geld gegeben? B: Mir.
A: Who did he give the money to? B: Me.

7.1.1.4 The use of subject pronouns with the six persons of the verb

When conjugating a verb in German (see 10.1.1), you derive the six persons of the verb from the infinitive; the present tense of machen, for example, looks like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ich</td>
<td>mache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du</td>
<td>machst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er</td>
<td>macht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir</td>
<td>machen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>macht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie</td>
<td>machen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In so doing, it is understood that sie macht and es macht, both being third persons, will follow the er form, and Sie machen will follow the sie (plural) form, so that although there are in fact nine persons of the verb if you include sie, es and Sie, for the sake of brevity only six are usually given.

Remember that ‘it’ as a third person subject pronoun is not necessarily
simply *es*; it may be *er* or *sie* if relating back to a masculine or feminine noun respectively, e.g.

A: *Was hast du mit dem Hammer gemacht?* B: *Er liegt auf dem Tisch.*
A: What have you done with the hammer? B: It is on the table.

A: *Mach die Tür bitte zu!* B: *Sie ist schon zu.*
A: Please shut the door. B: It's already shut.

### 7.1.1.5 *Es/dies/das* as subject pronouns referring to nouns of all three genders and plurals

Although ‘*it*’ with reference to a preceding noun usually agrees in gender with that noun (i.e. ‘*it*’ is rendered by either *er*, *sie* or *es*, see 7.1.1.4), only *es* is used when the verb that follows is *sein* and the predicate of the clause (i.e. that part which follows the verb) contains a noun or an adjective used as a noun, e.g.

*Siehst du diesen Tisch? Es ist ein uralter Tisch./Es ist ein uralter.*
See this table? It is a really old table./It’s a really old one.

*Ich trinke Limonade. Es ist herrliche Limonade./Es ist eine herrliche.*
I’m drinking a soft drink. It is a delicious soft drink./It’s a delicious one.

*Er hat ein Auto. Es ist ein neues Auto./Es ist ein neues.*
He’s got a car. It is a new car. It is a new one.

But if the predicate of the clause contains an adjective, then *er*, *sie* or *es* must be used, depending on the gender of the noun to which the ‘*it*’ refers, e.g.

*Siehst du diesen Tisch? Er ist uralt.*
See this table? It is really old.

*Ich trinke Limonade. Sie ist herrlich.*
I’m drinking a soft drink. It is delicious.

*Er hat ein Auto. Es ist neu.*
He has got a car. It is new.

But further still, this use of *es* is not limited to the above. It is also used with reference to plural antecedents, thereby rendering ‘*they*’ and being followed by a plural verb, *sind*, e.g.
Wir haben beide einen neuen Wagen.
We have both got a new car.

Es sind ganz teure Wagen./Es sind ganz teure.
They are quite expensive cars./They are quite expensive ones.

Sie sind ganz teuer.
They are quite expensive.

In a similar way dies (this/these) and das (that/those) are also used, e.g.

Diese Leute kenne ich sehr gut.
I know these people very well.

Dies/das sind sehr nette Leute.
These/those are very nice people.

Compare:

Es sind sehr nette Leute.
They are very nice people.

Note too Das/dies ist sein Vater (That/this is his father) where das and dies are used regardless of the gender of the noun that follows the verb.

The above use of es instead of er/sie (he/she) or sie (they) also extends to people, but in this case the use of es instead of er/sie or sie is optional, although in the singular er/sie are more usual than es, but in the plural es is more usual than sie, e.g.

Seine Mutter lebt noch. Es/sie ist eine alte Frau. (sie more usual)
His mother is still alive. She is an old lady.

Siehst du die Kinder dort? Es/sie sind meine Kinder. (es more usual)
See those kids there? They’re my kids.

For those who have learnt French, this use of es described here is identical to that of ce versus il or elle in French.

Note: See 10.4.5 and 10.4.6 for use of es as a dummy subject.

7.1.2 Object or accusative pronouns

When English makes a distinction between subject and object forms of the personal pronouns, it is in fact employing case, e.g. ‘I/me’, ‘you/you’, ‘he/him’, ‘she/her’, ‘it/it’, ‘we/us’, ‘you/you’, ‘they/them’. To say ‘I see him’, and
not ‘I see he’, is to make a grammatical distinction between a subject and an object form of the pronoun or, in other words, to employ case. English is inconsistent here since in the case of ‘you’ and ‘it’ no such distinction is made. Compare the German, where not all persons make a distinction either, but context always makes the distinction clear as it does in English, e.g.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ich/mich}, & \text{ du/dich}, \text{ er/ihn, sie/sie, es/es, wir/uns, ihr/euch, Sie/Sie, sie/sie} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\begin{align*}
\text{Sie hat mich in der Stadt getroffen.} \\
\text{She met me in town.} \\
\text{Ich habe sie in der Stadt getroffen.} \\
\text{I met her in town.}
\end{align*}

7.1.2.1 Use of object pronouns with certain prepositions

These accusative forms of the personal pronouns are also used after certain prepositions (see 12.1 and 12.3).

7.1.3 Indirect object or dative pronouns

English makes no distinction between direct and indirect object pronouns. In other words, the paradigm of personal pronouns is only two-tiered, i.e.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{I} & \quad \text{you} & \quad \text{he} & \quad \text{she} & \quad \text{it} & \quad \text{we} & \quad \text{you} & \quad \text{they} \\
\text{me} & \quad \text{you} & \quad \text{him} & \quad \text{her} & \quad \text{it} & \quad \text{us} & \quad \text{you} & \quad \text{them}
\end{align*}
\]

But in German the paradigm is three-tiered as German distinguishes between ‘I’, ‘me’ and ‘to me’ etc., where ‘to me’ is referred to as the indirect object or the dative, i.e.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{N} & \quad \text{ich} & \quad \text{du} & \quad \text{er} & \quad \text{sie} & \quad \text{es} & \quad \text{wir} & \quad \text{ihr} & \quad \text{Sie} & \quad \text{sie} \\
\text{A} & \quad \text{mich} & \quad \text{dich} & \quad \text{ihn} & \quad \text{sie} & \quad \text{es} & \quad \text{uns} & \quad \text{euch} & \quad \text{Sie} & \quad \text{sie} \\
\text{D} & \quad \text{mir} & \quad \text{dir} & \quad \text{ihm} & \quad \text{ihr} & \quad \text{ihm} & \quad \text{uns} & \quad \text{euch} & \quad \text{Ihnen} & \quad \text{ihnen}
\end{align*}
\]

\begin{align*}
\text{Er hat mich im Kino gesehen.} \\
\text{He saw me in the cinema.} \\
\text{Er hat mir fünf Euro gegeben.} \\
\text{He gave me five euros.}
\end{align*}

Rephrasing the second sentence as ‘He gave five euros to me’ reveals the ‘me’ in the second sentence as in fact meaning ‘to me’, which is an indirect
7 Pronouns

object and thus requires the dative form of the appropriate pronoun. Compare:

**Sie hat ihm einen Brief geschickt.**
She sent him a letter. (= She sent a letter to him.) (dative), but

**Sie hat ihn nach Hause geschickt.**
She sent him home. (accusative)

7.1.3.1 Use of indirect object pronouns with certain prepositions

These dative forms of the personal pronouns are also used after certain prepositions (see 12.2 and 12.3).

7.1.4 Prepositional adverbs (i.e. da(r)- + preposition and hier- + preposition)

The subject and object pronouns of the third person singular and plural are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>ihn</td>
<td>sie</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>sie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>ihm</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihm</td>
<td>ihnen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When ‘it’ and ‘them’ with reference to things, as opposed to people, are preceded by a preposition, the above pronominal forms cannot be used; in other words in es, auf es etc. are not possible at all, and in ihn, auf ihm etc. and in sie, auf ihr etc. are only possible if referring to a person. German uses the so-called prepositional adverb in such cases, formed by combining da (there, an adverb) with the preposition in question, e.g. damit (with it/them), dahinter (behind it/them). When the preposition begins with a vowel, an r is inserted to aid pronunciation, e.g. darauf (on it/them), darin (in it/them), e.g.

*Ich habe Knoblauch mit diesem Messer geschnitten, also kann ich das Brot nicht damit schneiden.*
I have cut garlic with this knife so I can’t cut the bread with it.

*Sie konnte ihre Brille nicht finden, denn sie saß darauf.*
She couldn’t find her glasses because she was sitting on them.

*Unsere Nachbarn sind in vielen Ländern gewesen und wollen jetzt ein Buch darüber schreiben.*
Our neighbours have been in lots of countries and now want to write a book about them/about it.
The forms with an r in them very commonly drop the vowel in dar- in colloquial speech, e.g. drauf, dran, drüber.

The topic of the prepositional adverb does not end there, however. Forms like damit, darin, darauf etc. do not just render ‘with it/them’, ‘in it/them’, ‘on it/them’ etc. but also translate ‘with that/those’, ‘in that/those, ‘on that/those’ etc., e.g.

**Damit kann man keine Brötchen schneiden.**
You can’t cut breadrolls with that/those.

And just as the adverb da (there) replaces the pronouns ‘that/those’ in such cases, so too does the adverb hier (here) replace dies (this/these), where the pronouns ‘this/these’ follow a preposition, e.g.

**Wie soll ich um gottes Willen hiermit das Brot schneiden?**
How am I meant to cut the bread with this/these for heaven’s sake?

**Setz dich hierauf!**
Sit on this.

The only prepositions which cannot be combined with da- and hier- are those that take the genitive (see 12.4) as well as außer, gegenüber, ohne and seit.

To understand how these constructions work in German, compare the use of similar constructions with ‘there/here’ + preposition in archaic English, e.g. ‘He’s cut the breadrolls therewith’, which can stand for either ‘with it’ in the case of one knife or ‘with them’ in the case of several knives. A very similar construction occurs with wo(r)- (see 7.5 and 7.6.3).

### 7.1.5 Pronominal use of articles and other determiners

Articles, both definite and indefinite, as well as other determiners followed by nouns are dealt with under 5.5, 7.7.1 and 8.1.4. But all these words can also be used as pronouns, in which case the noun to which they refer is not mentioned but understood, and thus the gender and case of the implied noun must be observed.

The der/die/das paradigm (see 5.1), in addition to translating ‘the’, can also be used to translate ‘he/she/it’ in the nom., acc. and dat., especially when there is some emphasis, in which case they normally stand at the beginning of their clause; this is particularly common in spoken German, e.g.
A: Kennst du Johann Müller? B: Ja, den kenne ich sehr gut.
A: Do you know Johann Müller? B: Yes, I know him very well.

A: Sind die Mayers verreist? B: Ja, die sind zur Zeit in Sizilien.
A: Are the Mayers away? B: Yes, they are in Sicily at the moment.

7.2 Possessives

The following constitute the possessives in English:

my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their

Because these words stand in front of nouns they are, strictly speaking, possessive adjectives, not possessive pronouns, but derived from them are the true possessive pronouns – they are pronouns because they can stand alone replacing a noun; in English these are:

mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs

The distinction between the two sets of forms is as follows:

‘This is my book./This is mine.’ or ‘My book is blue./Mine is blue.’
‘That is his dog./This is his.’ or ‘His dog is brown./His is brown.’

In expressing these forms in German, you need to take note of both gender and case.

7.2.1 The possessive adjectives

mein (my), dein (your), sein (his), ihr (her), sein (its), unser (our),
euer (your), ihr (your), ihr (their)

The endings of these possessive adjectives are exactly the same as those for ein (see 5.3 and 5.4), except that these also have plural endings of course (i.e. ‘my books’ is possible whereas ‘a books’ is not); the plural endings are identical to those of der/die/das, i.e.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>meinen</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>meines</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meines</td>
<td>meiner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>meinem</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meinem</td>
<td>meinen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You must apply these endings to all the possesive adjectives given above, e.g.
Er kennt unseren Vater nicht.
He doesn’t know our father.

Ich habe den Namen ihres Lehrers vergessen.
I have forgotten her/their teacher’s name.

Just as context usually makes it clear whether sie means ‘she’ or ‘they’ (see 7.1.1), whether ihr means ‘her’ or ‘their’ is normally revealed by context too.

### 7.2.2 Possessive pronouns

The paradigm of the possessive pronoun differs from that of the possessive adjective given in 7.2.1 as follows – the three differences are underlined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>mein(e)s</td>
<td>meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>meinen</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>mein(e)s</td>
<td>meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>meines</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meines</td>
<td>meiner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>meinem</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meinem</td>
<td>meinen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note how the two paradigms alternate:

**Dies ist mein Buch./Dies ist mein(e)s.**
This is my book./This is mine.

**Mein Buch ist blau./Mein(e)s ist blau.**
My book is blue./Mine is blue.

**Das ist sein Hund./Das ist seiner.**
That is his dog./This is his.

**Sein Hund ist braun./Seiner ist braun.**
His dog is brown./His is brown.

**Ich habe heute Morgen deinen Hund im Park hier gegenüber gesehen, aber meinen habe ich noch nicht finden können.**
I saw your dog in the park opposite this morning but I still haven’t been able to find mine.

In speech it is usual to drop the e from the ending of the nom. and acc. neuter forms, which is also not uncommon in less formal writing.

A phrase such as ‘a friend of mine’ uses the independent possessive in English, but the dative personal pronoun in German, e.g. ein Freund von mir; compare einer meiner Freunde (one of my friends).
7.2.2.1 Alternative forms of the possessive pronoun

In elevated style two alternative paradigms of the possessive pronoun occur which you will merely need to recognize, but will never need to use. Firstly there is the der meinige/deinige/seinige/ihrige/unserige/eurige/ihrige paradigm where the forms in -ige are regarded as adjectives and thus take the endings of an adjective after the definite article (see 8.1), e.g.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>der meinige</td>
<td>die meinige</td>
<td>das meinige</td>
<td>die meinigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>den meinigen</td>
<td>die meinige</td>
<td>das meinige</td>
<td>die meinigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>des meinigen</td>
<td>der meinigen</td>
<td>des meinigen</td>
<td>der meinigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>dem meinigen</td>
<td>der meinigen</td>
<td>dem meinigen</td>
<td>den meinigen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Seine ganzen Verwandten sind nach Australien ausgewandert, aber die ihrigen wohnen alle noch in der Bundesrepublik.
All of his relatives have migrated to Australia but hers still all live in Germany.

The following paradigm exists as an alternative to the above but it too is limited to formal contexts and merely needs to be recognized, not used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>der meine</td>
<td>die meine</td>
<td>das meine</td>
<td>die meinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>den meinen</td>
<td>die meine</td>
<td>das meine</td>
<td>die meinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>des meinen</td>
<td>der meinen</td>
<td>des meinen</td>
<td>der meinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>dem meinen</td>
<td>der meinen</td>
<td>dem meinen</td>
<td>den meinen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Similarly der deine/seine/ihre/unsere/eure/Ihre/ihre, e.g.

Ihre vier Kinder sind alle Mädchen, die seinen aber alle Jungen.
Her four children are all girls but his are all boys.

7.3 Reflexive pronouns

Reflexive pronouns are used primarily with certain verbs when the doers of those verbs are regarded as performing the action on themselves, e.g. sich waschen (to wash [oneself], see 7.3.1), where the reflexive ‘oneself’ is superfluous in English but obligatory in German. The verb sich waschen is called a reflexive verb and it is conjugated as follows with each person employing the reflexive pronoun after it:

ich wasche mich  wir waschen uns
du wäschst dich  ihr wascht euch
er wäscht sich    sie waschen sich
All forms are identical to accusative pronouns except for the third person singular and plural where sich means ‘himself’, ‘herself’, ‘itself’, ‘oneself’ and ‘themselves’. The non-familiar second person singular and plural form is of course Sie waschen sich where sich means ‘yourself/ yourselves’.

There is an emphatic form of the reflexive pronoun which consists of the above forms followed by selbst, i.e. mich selbst, dich selbst, sich selbst etc. You need to be careful here as these forms closely resemble the unemphatic reflexive forms in English, i.e. ‘myself’, ‘yourself’ etc., but in German these emphatic forms are only used when a contrast is made between performing the action on someone else and on yourself, e.g.

Er rasiert jeden Morgen seinen Opa, bevor er sich selbst rasiert.
He shaves his granddad every morning before he shaves himself.

The use of ‘himself’ here in English, rather than omitting the reflexive altogether, shows that there is an emphasis, which means that selbst must be employed in German. Compare:

Er rasiert sich nicht jeden Tag.
He doesn’t shave every day. (reflexive superfluous in English)

Er hat sich in Italien sehr amüsiert.
He enjoyed himself a great deal in Italy. (reflexive obligatory in English)

7.3.1 Dative reflexive pronouns

There are also dative forms of the reflexive pronouns, i.e. mir, dir, sich, uns, euch, sich. As you can see, these differ only slightly from the accusative forms in 7.3, i.e. mich, dich, sich, uns, euch, sich. In fact only the first and second persons singular differ. These dative forms are used in two instances.

Firstly, when using an optionally reflexive verb, i.e. a verb like waschen or rasieren, which expresses actions that can be performed on others (in which case they are used as normal transitive verbs and require no reflexive pronoun), the dative form of the reflexive pronoun is required if the verb has a direct object, e.g.

Ich wasche mich jeden Tag. (no object mentioned)
I wash every day.
Ich wasche mir die Hände mindestens zehnmal am Tag. (die Hände = object)
I wash my hands at least ten times a day.

But it is only with ich and du as subjects of the verb that a distinction is made. Look at the same two sentences with er as their subject:

Er wäscht sich jeden Tag.
He washes every day.

Er wäscht sich die Hände mindestens zehnmal am Tag.
He washes his hands at least ten times a day.

The second use of the dative of the reflexive is dealt with under 7.3.2.

### 7.3.2 Reflexive pronouns used independently of verbs

It is possible for reflexive pronouns to be used after a limited number of prepositions referring back to the subject of the sentence, e.g.

**Ich war außer mir vor Angst./Er war außer sich vor Angst.**
I was beside myself with fear./He was beside himself with fear.

**Ich habe kein Taschentuch bei mir./Er hat kein Geld bei sich.**
I haven’t got a handkerchief on me./He hasn’t got any money on him.

### 7.3.3 Use of selbst/selber to render English reflexives

Where an English reflexive pronoun (i.e. myself, yourself, himself/herself/itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves) is used independently of a reflexive verb and expresses an emphatic ‘myself’ etc., German does not use reflexive pronouns but rather selbst or selber – the two are synonymous and interchangeable, e.g.

**A: Soll ich dir helfen? B: Danke, ich kann es selbst/selber machen.**
A: Shall I help you? B: No thanks, I can do it myself.

**Er hat den Brief selber geschrieben.**
He wrote the letter himself.
7.4 Demonstrative pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns, which are identical in form to demonstrative adjectives, are dealt with under articles and other determiners (see 5.1 and 5.2).

7.5 Interrogative pronouns

These pronouns are used when asking questions. They must not be confused with ‘who/whose/whom’ as relative pronouns (see 7.6). ‘Whom’, which is more usually ‘who’ in spoken English, is a vestige of the accusative/dative, a distinction which is of course still made in German, e.g.

**Wer wohnt in diesem Haus?**
Who lives in this house?

**Wen hast du im Park gesehen?**
Who(m) did you see in the park?

**Wessen Tochter ist sie?**
Whose daughter is she?

**Wem hat er den Brief gegeben?**
Who(m) did he give the letter to?/To whom did he give the letter?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>wer</th>
<th>who</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>wen</td>
<td>who(m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>wessen</td>
<td>whose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>wem</td>
<td>(to) who(m)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although *wessen* literally means ‘whose’, when asking about possession it is more usual in German to use *gehören* + dat. (to belong to) if context permits it, e.g.

**Wem gehört diese Handtasche?**
Whose handbag is this? (lit. Who does this handbag belong to?)

Use of these interrogative pronouns is not limited to direct questions but also applies to indirect questions, in which case the pronouns act like subordinating conjunctions and relative pronouns by sending the finite verb in their clause to the end of that clause, e.g.

**Er fragte mich, wer in diesem Haus wohnt.**
He asked me who lives in this house.
Ich weiß nicht, wem diese Handtasche gehört.
I don’t know who this handbag belongs to/whose handbag this is.

Was (what) is also an interrogative pronoun, e.g.

Was hat sie in der Hand?
What has she got in her hand?

Ich habe keine Ahnung, was sie in der Hand hat.
I have no idea what she has in her hand.

Was, unlike English ‘what’, cannot be used in combination with a preposition, which in English is usually placed at the end of the clause. Where this occurs in English, German uses an adverbial construction with wo(r)-, the r being inserted when the preposition begins with a vowel. In so doing, prepositions are not left dangling at the end of a sentence in German as is so often the case in English, e.g.

Womit spielen die Kinder?
What are the kids playing with?

Worauf wartest du?
What are you waiting for?

These constructions have parallels in archaic English (compare da- under 7.1.4), e.g. ‘Wherefore was he not helped?’, ‘Whereon lieth the snow?’

See 7.6.3 for the use of wo(r)- as a relative pronoun.

### 7.6 Relative pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>das</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>den</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>das</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>dessen</td>
<td>deren</td>
<td>dessen</td>
<td>deren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>denen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A relative pronoun introduces a subordinate clause, called a relative clause, that relates back to a noun just mentioned (the antecedent) in order to add extra information about that noun; it is commonly embedded in a main clause, which is shown in German by placing commas both before and after it, while the use of commas with relative clauses in English is inconsistent, e.g.

Der Mann, der nebenan wohnt, hat die Absicht nach Amerika auszuwandern.
The man who lives next-door is intending to emigrate to America.
In the above example the word order in the main clause, i.e. Der Mann hat die Absicht nach Amerika auszuwandern, remains untouched by the insertion of the relative clause, der nebenan wohnt. The finite verb in the main clause remains in second position, as it would without the addition of a relative clause, whereas the verb in the relative clause is in final position, unlike English, but in accordance with it being a form of subordinate clause (see 11.2).

The gender of the relative pronoun is determined by that of the noun which it relates back to, while its case is determined by the grammatical role it is playing in the relative clause. In the above example der has been selected from the paradigm as Mann is masculine and the relative pronoun der is the subject of wohnt. But look at the following examples where other case forms occur:

**Mein Nachbar, den ich sehr gern habe, ist Deutscher.**
My neighbour, who(m) I like a great deal, is a German.

**Das ist die Ärztin, deren Sohn in meiner Klasse ist.**
That is the doctor whose son is in my class.

There are several complications in English with regard to relative pronouns that do not exist in German. The relative in English can be either ‘who’ or ‘which’, depending on whether the antecedent is personal or not, or even ‘that’ for both personal and non-personal antecedents. In fact, the relative pronoun is commonly even omitted in English, though only when it is not the subject of its clause, but it can never be omitted in German. All the following English examples can only be rendered in one way in German:

**Das ist nicht der Mann, den ich gestern Abend in der Stadt gesehen habe.**
That is not the man who(m) I saw in town last night.
That is not the man that I saw in town last night.
That is not the man I saw in town last night.

The same applies to non-personal antecedents:

**Dies ist der Tisch, den wir renoviert haben.**
This is the table which we renovated.
This is the table that we renovated.
This is the table we renovated.

You must be careful with omitted ‘thats’ in English. Often an omitted ‘that’ is the subordinating conjunction dass (see 11.2), not a relative pronoun, but
in German omission is not possible in either case, e.g. ‘He said (that) he’d do it.’ (see 10.3.1.1 for omission of dass with indirect speech).

### 7.6.1 Relative pronouns preceded by prepositions

Prepositions commonly precede relative pronouns in German, thereby determining the case of that pronoun. It can be difficult to recognize when this is the case as colloquial English normally places the preposition at the end of the clause instead of before the relative pronoun – which is however done in more formal English – and to complicate the issue even further, English commonly drops the relative pronoun altogether despite the presence of a preposition. In German you must always place the preposition before the appropriate relative pronoun at the beginning of the clause and place the finite verb at the end, e.g.

**Ich habe den Stuhl, auf dem du jetzt sitzt, erst heute Nachmittag repariert.**

I repaired the chair you’re now sitting on only this afternoon.

I only repaired the chair which/that you’re now sitting on this afternoon.

I only repaired the chair on which you’re now sitting this afternoon.

**Die Leute, von denen wir dieses Haus gekauft haben, wohnen jetzt in Stade.**

The people we bought this house from now live in Stade.

The people who/that we bought this house from now live in Stade.

The people from whom we bought this house now live in Stade.

Note that ‘whose’ is commonly avoided in English these days when the antecedent is non-personal, a contorted construction with ‘of which’ being preferred, but in German use of dessen and deren is purely dependent on the gender of the antecedent and whether it is personal or non-personal is irrelevant, e.g.

**Die Häuser, deren Dächer im Sturm weggeweht sind, werden sofort repariert.**

The houses whose roofs blew away in the storm will be repaired immediately.

The houses of which the roofs blew away in the storm will be repaired immediately.

It is stylistically preferable in German not to separate a relative pronoun from its antecedent, although this is sometimes possible – the problem does
not arise in English as past participles and infinitives are not sent to the end of their clause, e.g.

Mein Sohn hat das Fahrrad verkauft, das ich ihm zum Geburtstag geschenkt habe.
Mein Sohn hat das Fahrrad, das ich ihm zum Geburtstag geschenkt habe, verkauft. (avoid this although it is possible)
My son has sold the bicycle which I gave him for his birthday.

7.6.2 Wo as a relative pronoun relating back to place and time

Wo, which literally means ‘where’ (see 11.2), is used in spoken German to replace a preposition + a relative pronoun with reference to a place, but this alternation has a parallel in English too, e.g.

Die Stadt, wo er jahrelang als Kind gewohnt hat, hat er nie wieder besucht.
He never again visited the city where he lived as a child.

Die Stadt, in der er jahrelang als Kind gewohnt hat, hat er nie wieder besucht.
He never again visited the city in which he lived as a child.

But this use of wo does not stop here in German, unlike English. In German it can even be used, once again more in spoken than written German, to relate back to an expression of time, e.g.

Wir leben jetzt in einer Zeit, wo die Luftverschmutzung immer schlechter wird.
We are now living in a time in which air pollution is getting worse and worse.

In more formal German this would be expressed with a relative pronoun, e.g.

Wir leben jetzt in einer Zeit, in der die Luftverschmutzung immer schlechter wird.

7.6.3 Was and wo(r)- as relative pronouns

‘Which’ is used in English to relate back to indefinite antecedents that are not nouns with a given gender but indefinite pronouns, and may even be entire clauses. In German was is used in such cases, e.g.
Nicht alles, was er sagt, ist wahr, weißt du?  
Not everything (that) he says is true, you know.

Die Inflationsrate ist im letzten Jahr gestiegen, was gar nicht gut für die Wirtschaft ist.  
The inflation rate has risen over the last year which is not at all good for the economy. (The antecedent is the whole first clause, i.e. the fact that the inflation rate has risen.)

The relative pronoun was above cannot be used in combination with a preposition. Where English uses ‘that’ or ‘which’ to refer to an indefinite antecedent in combination with a preposition, German uses wo(r) + the appropriate preposition, e.g.

Das ist etwas, worauf wir sehr lange gewartet haben.  
That is something that/which we waited a very long time for.  
That is something we waited a very long time for.  
That is something for which we waited a very long time.

7.6.4 Use of participles in extended adjectival phrases in lieu of relative clauses

In slightly more formal style, and very often in journalese, you might find an avoidance of relative clauses by placing the information usually contained in the relative clause before the noun it refers to, in an extended adjectival phrase. Such phrases always contain a past or present participle (see 10.6), and are only translatable into English by converting them back into relative clauses which often contain a passive (see 10.4), e.g.

Gestern wurde auf der Ausstellung ein neu entwickeltes Modell vorgestellt. (past participle)  
Gestern wurde auf der Ausstellung ein Modell vorgestellt, das neu entwickelt worden ist. (relative clause in passive)  
A model was presented at the exhibition yesterday that has been newly developed.

Ich las eine Kritik über das kürzlich veröffentlichte Buch. (past participle)  
Ich las eine Kritik über das Buch, das kürzlich veröffentlicht worden war. (relative clause in passive)  
I read a review of the book which had recently been published.
Sie sah ein in entgegengesetzter Richtung fahrendes Auto.  
(present participle)  
Sie sah ein Auto, das in entgegengesetzter Richtung fuhr.  
(relative clause)  
She saw a car which was driving in the opposite direction.

Es handelte sich da um eine nicht zu vermeidende Schwierigkeit.  
(present participle)  
Es handelte sich da um eine Schwierigkeit, die nicht zu vermeiden war.  
(relative clause, see 10.4.7.c)  
It was a matter of a difficulty which could not be avoided.

7.6.5 **English participial constructions which must be rendered by relative clauses in German**

Under 7.6.4 examples are given of German participial constructions which are rendered by relative clauses in English. There are, however, participial (both past and present) constructions in English which must be rendered by relative clauses in German, e.g.

**Diese Häuser, die in den fünfziger Jahren gebaut worden sind, sind von minderwertiger Qualität.**

These houses built in the fifties are of inferior quality.

This could also be rendered by an adjectival phrase placed before the noun:

**Diese in den fünfziger Jahren gebauten Häuser sind von minderwertiger Qualität.**

**Der Mann, der in der Ecke des Wartezimmers die Zeitung liest, ist sehr krank.**

The man reading the paper in the corner of the waiting room is very sick.

7.7 **Indefinite pronouns**

a) Indefinite pronouns like jeder(mann) (everybody), jemand (somebody) and niemand (nobody), although they refer to any person of either gender, require the use of masculine forms of the possessive. The current use of ‘their’ in English to avoid an unwieldy ‘his/her’ is not possible in German, e.g.
Jeder wollte seine Meinung äußern.
Everyone wanted to air their opinion.

Niemand hat seinen Hund mitnehmen dürfen.
No one was allowed to take their dog with them.

b) ‘Everyone, everybody’

The most usual word is jeder, but it is sometimes found in the fuller form jedermann, e.g.

Das weiß doch jeder.
Everyone/everybody knows that.

c) ‘Someone, somebody; anyone, anybody; no one, nobody’

The subtle distinction between ‘someone’ and ‘anyone’ does not exist in German; both are rendered by jemand, and when ‘anyone’ is used together with a negative in English, German simply uses niemand (nobody) (see 14.2.h), e.g.

Hast du jemand gesehen?
Did you see anyone/anybody?

Ja, ich habe jemand gesehen.
Yes, I saw someone/somebody.

Nein, ich habe niemand gesehen.
No, I didn’t see anyone/anybody. (i.e. I saw nobody/no one.)

‘Anyone’ that means ‘absolutely anyone’ is, however, rendered by jeder, e.g.

Sie redet mit jedem.
She talks to anyone. (= everyone; see point b above)

Jemand and niemand also have case forms, although the acc. and dat. forms are only used in more formal style, e.g.

N jemand niemand
A jemanden niemanden
G jemanden niemands
D jemandem niemandem

Die Polizei hat noch mit niemandem gesprochen.
The police have not yet spoken to anyone.
Ich habe jemandens Mütze im Schuppen gefunden.
I found somebody's cap in the shed.

‘Somebody/someone else’ is jemand anders.

d) ‘Something, anything, nothing’ (see 14.2.h)

The situation here is similar to that above: ‘something/anything’ are rendered by etwas, or more colloquially by was; ‘nothing’ is nichts or in the spoken language nix, e.g.

Hast du etwas/was gekauft?
Did you buy anything?

Ja, ich habe etwas/was gekauft.
Yes, I bought something.

Nein, ich habe nichts gekauft.
No, I didn’t buy anything. (i.e. I bought nothing.)

For etwas and nichts followed by an adjective see 6.7.1.

Be warned that etwas is also an adverb meaning ‘somewhat’, but context always makes this clear as the adjective that follows is not inflected, e.g.

Ich finde den Anzug etwas teuer.
I find the suit somewhat expensive.

e) ‘Whoever, whatever’

Wer ... auch and was ... auch translate the above but be careful with the syntax that they require, as auch is placed later in the clause and note the lack of inversion of subject and verb in the second clause of the second example.

Wer am Theaterstück auch teilnehmen will, ist meinenwegen herzlich willkommen.
Whoever wants to take part in the play is welcome as far as I’m concerned.

Was er auch schon beigetragen hat, er kann noch mehr für die Sache tun.
Whatever he has already contributed, he can do even more for the cause.
Wo(hin) ... auch (wherever) and wann ... auch (whenever), although not pronouns but adverbs, are used in similar constructions.

**7.7.1 Indefinite pronouns also used as determiners**

a) Other aspects of these indefinite pronouns are dealt with under determiners (see 5.5) and adjectives (see 8.1.4) but here their pronominal functions are dealt with.

When the following words are used independently, i.e. when they are not followed by a noun, but a noun can be inferred, they are pronouns: alle (all), andere (other), beide (both), einige (some), mehrere (several), viele (many), verschiedene (various/different) and wenige (few). The inferred noun is by necessity plural and these pronouns are inflected for case, e.g.

**Alle (Anwesenden/Gäste) werden gebeten, den Saal zu verlassen.** (nom.)
All (present/guests) are requested to leave the room.

**Einige (Schüler) machen den Ausflug, aber andere nicht.** (nom.)
Some (pupils) are going on the excursion but others aren’t.

**Die Namen mehrerer (Teilnehmer) habe ich schon vergessen.** (gen.)
I have already forgotten the names of several (participants).

**In diesem Land ist Alkohol zollfrei, aber in vielen (Ländern) ist das nicht der Fall.** (dat.)
In this country alcohol is duty-free but in many that is not the case.

**Welche (some, a few) and die meisten (most of) can also be used pronominally, e.g.**

**A: Ich muss Äpfel kaufen. B: Brauchst du nicht. Ich hab’ schon welche gekauft.**
A: I must buy apples. B: You don’t need to. I’ve already bought some/a few.

**Die Bewohner mussten das Gebäude verlassen, aber die meisten wollten es nicht.**
The residents had to leave the building but most (of them) didn’t want to.
Another indefinite pronoun worthy of mention here is ein paar (some, a few), which contrasts with ein Paar (a pair of), e.g.

_Ich habe heute ein Paar Sandalen am Strand gefunden._
I found a pair of sandals on the beach today.

A: Hat er überhaupt Freunde? B: Ja, er hat ein paar (neue Freunde gemacht).
A: Has he got any friends at all? B: Yes, he has a few (has made a few new friends).

b) Beide (both)

Beide, in addition to being used as both an indefinite pronoun and a determiner like all the above, can also be used as an adjective after other determiners, e.g.

_A: Wer will also mitkommen, Julia oder Felix? B: Beide möchten mitgehen._
A: Who wants to come with me, Julia or Felix? B: Both want to go with you.

Beide Bücher/die beiden Bücher waren teuer.
Both (the) books were expensive.

This adjectival use of beide is also a way of rendering ‘two’, e.g.

_Die beiden Brüder sind früh gestorben._
The two brothers died young.

There is also a neuter inflected form, beides, which is used pronominally with reference to objects, e.g.

_A: Was möchtest du zum Geburtstag – eine Kamera oder einen Videorecorder? B: Beides._
A: What would you like for your birthday – a camera or a videorecorder? B: Both.

7.7.2 The indefinite pronoun _man_ (see 7.1.1.2 and 10.4.7)

_Man_ means ‘one’, but whereas this pronoun generally sounds rather formal in English, it is an everyday word in German, e.g.

_Mann muss vorsichtig sein._
One must be careful. (= You must be careful.)
There are several tricks to watch out for when using man. It has case forms and the possessive ‘one’s’ is expressed by sein, e.g.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>einen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>einem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Wenn es einem schlecht geht, findet man oft, dass einen seine Freunde vergessen haben.
When one is having a hard time one often finds that one’s friends have forgotten one.

The appropriate reflexive pronoun to use when man is the subject of a reflexive verb is sich, e.g.

Man befindet sich hier in einer Traumwelt.
One finds oneself in a dreamworld here.

When you learn a reflexive verb in its infinitive form (e.g. sich amüsieren), this translates in fact as ‘to enjoy oneself’ (see 7.3).

Generally speaking, spoken English prefers to use ‘you’ instead of ‘one’. Colloquially German has the possibility of using du in the same way, but not because it is felt that man sounds too formal (see 7.1.1.2), e.g.

Du musst in Kairo aufpassen, dass du nicht beraubt wirst.
You have to be careful in Cairo that you don’t get robbed.

Man muss in Kairo aufpassen, dass man nicht beraubt wird.
One has to be careful in Cairo that one doesn’t get robbed.

See 10.4.7 for how man is used to avoid the passive.
As you will see below, an intricate system of adjectival endings prevails in German. It is perhaps the best example of German as an inflectional language. The following paradigms show how adjectives are inflected or declined and are thus often referred to as adjectival inflections or declensions.

Adjectives are used both predicatively and attributively, as in English. A predicate (also called predicative) adjective is one that does not stand in front of a noun, i.e. it is not used attributively like one standing in front of a noun, e.g. ‘His car is red’ (a predicate adjective), but ‘his red car’ (an attributive adjective). Predicate adjectives are invariable, i.e. they do not take endings, thus Sein Auto ist rot. But attributive adjectives must agree in gender, number and case with the noun they precede, thus sein rotes Auto (neuter, singular, nominative). And here lies another bothersome aspect of German which takes some mastering.

There are three paradigms or sets of adjectival endings that need to be learnt in order to know exactly what the correct ending is for an attributive adjective standing in front of a German noun. There are

1. the endings used after der/die/das (also called weak endings)
2. the endings used after ein/eine/ein (also called mixed endings) and
3. the unpreceded adjectival endings (also called strong endings).
8.1 Rules for inflection

8.1.1 The *der/die/das* (weak) endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This set of endings consists of merely an -e or an -en. There is a reason for this. They are used after *der/die/das* and other determiners (see 5.2) that take the same endings as *der/die/das* themselves, i.e. *dieser, jeder, jener, solcher, welcher*. As the determiners themselves have endings that clearly indicate gender, number and case, there is little need for the adjectives that follow them to repeat this information and thus German makes do with either -e or -en, e.g. nom. case *dieser arme Mann, welche alte Frau, jedes brave Kind*; dat. case *diesem armen Mann, welcher alten Frau, jedem braven Kind*. *Solcher* is generally only found before a plural noun in natural sounding German, i.e. *solche guten Leute* (such good people). (See last paragraph in 5.2.)

8.1.2 The *ein/eine/ein* (mixed) endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This set of endings is not quite so bland as the first, at least in the nom. and acc., but in the other cases and the plural the endings are identical to each other and to those applying in the set above. Again, there is a reason for this. Look at *ein guter Mann* and *ein gutes Kind* and compare this with *der gute Mann* and *das gute Kind*. The determiner *ein* here, unlike *der* and *das*, makes no distinction between the genders – only the adjective here tells you what the gender of the noun is. But in the genitive and dative cases, there is no difference between the endings in sets 1 and 2 as the determiners, both *der/die/das* and *ein/eine/ein*, indicate the gender and case, i.e. *dem/einem guten Mann, der/einer guten Frau, dem/einem guten Kind*.

The endings in this paradigm are applied after all the possessive adjectives (i.e. *mein, dein, sein/ihr/sein, unser, euer, Ihr, ihr* – see 7.2.1) as well as after
kein. Of course you cannot get a plural noun after ein, but you can after all the other determiners in this group and thus there is a fourth column above, i.e. keine alten Leute. A person’s name with a gen. -s ending (see 4.4) standing before the adjective fulfills the same function as a possessive adjective and thus these endings are required, e.g. Karls nagelneues Auto (Karl’s brand new car).

The black lines drawn between the accusative and the genitive endings in sets 1 and 2 are intended to emphasize that below these lines, including the plural, these two sets of endings are identical. This greatly reduces what you need to learn by heart. It is only in the nominative and accusative that you have to be careful if a determiner precedes a noun, because in the other two cases and in the plural there is only one possible ending, i.e. -en.

Remember this: a German noun with a determiner and an adjective in front of it can only grunt (rrr!) or hiss (sss!) once, i.e. der gute Mann/ein guter Mann and das gute Kind/ein gutes Kind. In other words der guter Mann and das gutes Kind are not possible – the system is more economical than this.

### 8.1.3 The unpreceded adjectival (strong) endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-er</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>-en</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These endings closely resemble the endings of der/die/das themselves. But there is a reason for this. These are the endings that apply when nothing (i.e. no determiner) precedes the noun and thus you only have the adjective to indicate the gender, number and case, e.g. teurer Wein, frische Milch, kaltes Bier, gute Leute. The full diversity of endings is needed here to convey these necessary grammatical relationships. But note that the masculine and neuter genitive endings are -en, not -es, which you would expect if this paradigm were exactly parallel to that of der/die/das (gen. des/der/des). To emphasize this apparent discrepancy, the -en endings in the genitive, where -es might be expected, have had their n underlined in the paradigm above. The ending -es in the genitive has been dispensed with here as the noun shows the case, because all masculine and neuter nouns end in -(e)s in the genitive singular (see 4.1), e.g. Anfang nächsten Monats (at the beginning of next month), Ende letzten Jahres (at the end of last year). This is another example of the
economy of the system of adjectival inflection; two indicators of the genitive are considered superfluous in this instance.

8.1.4 Adjectival endings after indefinite pronouns

Alle (all), einige (some), mehrere (several), verschiedene (various), viele (many) and wenige (few), in addition to being used as pronouns (see 7.7), can stand in front of plural nouns with an adjective between the two. The endings required after alle are the same as for the plural of der/die/das and those required after the others are the same as for unpreceded adjectives, i.e. the ending on the pronouns is identical to the ending on the adjective, e.g.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>alle guten Leute</th>
<th></th>
<th>viele gute Leute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Albanian</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Albanian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>alle guten Leute</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>viele gute Leute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>aller guten Leute</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>vieler guter Leute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>allen guten Leuten</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>vielen guten Leuten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The reason for this distinction in endings between alle and the other pronouns is that alle refers to a definite number and the others to an indefinite number.

8.1.5 Indeclinable adjectives

There is a handful of common adjectives borrowed from other languages that cannot take the endings given under 8.1.1 to 8.1.3, e.g. beige, lila (mauve), orange, purpur (purple). These adjectives can be used both attributively and predicatively but if used before a noun they often combine in writing with -farben, which can take the usual endings, e.g.

Ihre Bluse ist lila. Ihre lila/lilafarbene Bluse.
Her blouse is mauve. Her mauve blouse.

8.1.5.1 Adjectives which are prefixed to the noun

There is a considerable number of compound nouns in German where the adjective is not inflected before the noun but actually joined to it as the compound is regarded as a concept. You can do nothing more than note them as you come across them, e.g. Rotwein not roter Wein (red wine), Weißbrot not weißes Brot (white bread). Likewise die Fremdsprache (foreign
language), die Privatschule (private school), der Blauwal (blue whale), der Neubau (new building), der Nahverkehr (local traffic), das Sauerkraut.

Sometimes the first part of such compound nouns is a noun in German but an adjective in English, e.g. der Hauptbahnhof (central/main station), der Politikwissenschaftler (political scientist), mein Lieblingsbuch (my favourite book).

8.2 Comparative of adjectives and adverbs

As German does not distinguish between adjectives and adverbs in predicative position (see 9.1), what is said here with regard to adjectives applies equally to adverbs.

The comparative form of the adjective, i.e. when stating that something is ‘bigger’ or ‘smaller’ etc. than something else, is formed in German as in English, i.e. by the addition of -er to the adjective, e.g.

klein > kleiner  small > smaller
billig > billiger  cheap > cheaper

When adding the -er ending, the vowel of the adjective is usually umlauted, if it can be, i.e. if it is an a, o or u, e.g.

warm > wärmer  warm > warmer
groß > größer  big > bigger
klug > klüger  clever > cleverer

Adjectives containing au never umlaut, e.g.

grau > grauer  grey > greyer
schlau > schlauer  smart > smarter

There is a substantial number of additional adjectives that do not umlaut despite containing an umlautable vowel, e.g.

brav, bunt, dunkel, falsch, flach, froh, hohl, kahl, klar, knapp, lahm, morsch, nackt, platt, plump, rasch, roh, rund, sanft, satt, schlank, stolz, stumm, stumpf, toll, voll, wahr, zahm

In the case of the following adjectives usage varies:

bang, blass, glatt, dumm, fromm, gesund, krumm, nass, schmal, zart
There are just a few adjectives/adverbs that have an irregular comparative, e.g.

- gern > lieber (like > prefer)
- gut > besser (good > better)
- hoch > höher (high > higher)
- nah > näher (close/near > closer/nearer)
- viel > mehr (much > more)

Note the following. When an English adjective/adverb contains more than two syllables, and sometimes even if it has only two syllables, we prefer to form its comparative by means of ‘more’ rather than adding -er; however long the word is in German, add -er to the end of it, e.g.

- interessant > interessanter (interesting > more interesting)
- oft > öfter (often > more often/oftener)

Adjectives that end in -e simply add -r, e.g.

- müde > müder (tired > more tired)

Adjectives that end in unstressed -el and -er drop that e when adding the -er ending, e.g.

- dunkel > dunkler (dark > darker)
- teuer > teurer (expensive > more expensive)

### 8.2.1 Common constructions that incorporate the comparative

We’ll take groß, meaning ‘big’, ‘large’ or ‘tall’, to illustrate how the following phrases that compare two things work – you can substitute any adjective or adverb.

- **Er ist (genau) so groß wie ich.**
  He is (just) as tall as I/me.

- **Er ist nicht so groß wie ich.**
  He is not as tall as I/me.

- **Er ist größer als ich.**
  He is taller than I/me.
Er wird immer größer.
He’s getting taller and taller.

In colloquial English we often use an object pronoun in expressions such as these (i.e. ‘me’), whereas formal grammar demands a subject pronoun (i.e. ‘I’). No such confusion exists in German where the ich is seen to be a contraction of ... ich bin and thus only a subject pronoun is possible.

When je ... desto (the ... the) is used in a full sentence, as in the second example below, note that the first clause has subordinate word order (i.e. the verb is placed at the end of that clause) and the second clause undergoes inversion of subject and verb, e.g.

je größer desto besser
the taller the better

Je reicher er wird, desto geiziger wird er.
The richer he gets, the more miserly he becomes.

8.3 Superlative of adjectives and adverbs

8.3.1 The superlative of the adjective (see also 8.3.2 )

The superlative of the adjective is formed by adding -st, as is usually the case in English too, and umlauting the preceding vowel where appropriate, e.g.

billig > der/die/das billigste
cheap > the cheapest

gesund > die/die/das gesündeste
healthy > the healthiest

groß > der/die/das größte
big > the biggest

klein > der/die/das kleinste
small > the smallest

Adjectives ending in -d, -t or any s-sound (i.e. -s, -ss, -ß, -sch or -z) insert an e before adding -st, e.g.

hübsch > Elke ist das hübscheste Mädchen in der Klasse.
pretty > Elke is the prettiest girl in the class.

The same applies to the adjective neu (new), i.e. der neueste/am neuesten.

Adjectives of more than two syllables in English employ ‘most’ instead of
the ending ‘-st’, but this is not the case in German where -st can be added to an adjective whatever the number of syllables it contains, e.g.

- **langweilig > der langweiligste Film**
  - boring > the most boring film
- **interessant > das interessanteste Buch**
  - interesting > the most interesting book

### 8.3.2 The superlative of the adverb

The superlative of the adverb differs from that of the adjective explained above. It is formed as follows:

- **langsam > am langsamsten**  
  - slowly > slowest
- **schnell > am schnellsten**  
  - fast > fastest

There are several irregular adverbial superlatives, e.g.

- **gern > am liebsten**  
  - like > like most of all (see gern/lieber above)
- **gut > am besten**  
  - well > best
- **hoch > am höchsten**  
  - high > highest
- **nah > am nächsten**  
  - close/near > closest/nearest
- **viel > am meisten**  
  - much > most of all

This is how they are used in practice:

- **Er ist am schnellsten/langsamsten gelaufen.**
  - He ran (the) fastest/(the) slowest.
- **Wer ist am höchsten gesprungen?**
  - Who jumped (the) highest?

It can sometimes be difficult to ascertain whether an English superlative is the superlative of the adjective or the adverb. The test is to ask yourself if ‘the’ before the superlative can be omitted and still sound correct, in which case you are dealing with the superlative of the adverb and thus an am …-sten form is required; if it can’t be omitted, you are dealing with the superlative of the adjective and a der/die/das …-ste form is required, e.g.
Wer hat am besten gesungen?/Wer war am besten?
Who sang (the) best?/Who was (the) best?

Wer war der beste (Sänger)?
Who was the best (singer)?

Although this distinction can be a little tricky to determine in English, German offers you an easy way out. The *am …-sten* form is very commonly used as the superlative of the adjective, as well as of the adverb, and thus it is seldom necessary to make any distinction if you stick to the *am …-sten* form, e.g.

 Wer war der beste/schnellste/klügste? or
 Wer war am besten/schnellsten/klügsten?
Who was the best/fastest/cleverest?

In forms like *der beste/schnellste/klügste* the adjective is not capitalized, despite the fact that it would seem to be functioning as a noun; it is felt here that the noun is implied.

### 8.4 Predicate adjectives followed by a prepositional object

As in English, there is a large number of adjectives used predicatively that are followed by a fixed preposition, but whose preposition is often different from that used in English and thus these have to be learnt one by one. Here is a list of the most common. The adjective can either precede or follow a noun, although preceding it is more usual, whereas it nearly always follows a pronoun, e.g.

**Der Iran ist sehr reich an Öl.**
Iran is very rich in oil.

**Er ist in sie verliebt.**
He is in love with her.

In the following list the required grammatical case is given with all two-way prepositions but it should be noted that *auf* and *über* following such adjectives always govern the accusative, never the dative (see 12.3).

- abhängig von  
  dependent on
- allergisch gegen  
  allergic to
- anders als (an adverb)  
  different from
### Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Adjective</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arm an  (+ dat.)</td>
<td>poor in (e.g. minerals)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aufgeregt über  (+ acc.)</td>
<td>excited about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aufmerksam auf  (+ acc.)</td>
<td>aware of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedeckt mit</td>
<td>covered in/with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begeistert von/über (+ acc.)</td>
<td>enthusiastic about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bekannt wegen</td>
<td>(well-)known for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bereit zu</td>
<td>ready for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berühmt um</td>
<td>famous for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>besessen von</td>
<td>obsessed with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>besorgt um</td>
<td>worried/anxious about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bewusst (+ gen.)</td>
<td>aware of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>böse auf (+ acc.)</td>
<td>angry with, mad at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charakteristisch für</td>
<td>characteristic of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dankbar für</td>
<td>grateful for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>durstig nach</td>
<td>thirsty for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eifersüchtig auf (+ acc.)</td>
<td>jealous of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empfindlich gegen</td>
<td>sensitive to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empört über (+ acc.)</td>
<td>indignant about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enttäuscht von</td>
<td>disappointed in/with s.o.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erstaunt über (+ acc.)</td>
<td>amazed at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fähig zu</td>
<td>capable of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freundlich zu</td>
<td>friendly towards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gespannt auf (+ acc.)</td>
<td>curious about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gewöhnt an (+ acc.)</td>
<td>used to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gierig nach</td>
<td>greedy for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glücklich über (+ acc.)</td>
<td>happy about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gut in (+ dat.)</td>
<td>good at (e.g. languages)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German Phrase</td>
<td>English Phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gut zu</td>
<td>nice to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hungri g nach</td>
<td>hungry for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interessiert an (+ dat.)</td>
<td>interested in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neidisch auf (+ acc.)</td>
<td>envious of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neugierig auf (+ acc.)</td>
<td>curious about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimistisch über (+ acc.)</td>
<td>optimistic about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parallel mit</td>
<td>parallel to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pessimistisch über (+ acc.)</td>
<td>pessimistic about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reich an (+ dat.)</td>
<td>rich in (e.g. minerals)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schlecht in (+ dat.)</td>
<td>bad at (e.g. languages)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schuldig (+ gen.)</td>
<td>guilty of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwach in (+ dat.)</td>
<td>weak at (e.g. mathematics)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sicher vor (+ acc.)</td>
<td>safe from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stolz auf (+ acc.)</td>
<td>proud of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traurig über (+ acc.)</td>
<td>sad about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typisch für</td>
<td>typical of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>überzeugt von</td>
<td>convinced of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umgeben von</td>
<td>surrounded by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unabhängig von</td>
<td>independent of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verantwortlich für</td>
<td>responsible for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verglichen mit</td>
<td>compared to/with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verheiratet mit</td>
<td>married to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verliebt in (+ acc.)</td>
<td>in love with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verwandt mit</td>
<td>related to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voll (mit)</td>
<td>full of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wütend auf (+ acc.)</td>
<td>furious with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zufrieden mit</td>
<td>pleased/satisfied with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 9

Adverbs

Adverbs are those words which give information about the when, where, why and how of the action (i.e. the verb) of the sentence, but they can also qualify adjectives (e.g. ‘very good’) as well as other adverbs (e.g. ‘quite slowly’). They can be individual words or complete phrases. The approach adopted here is to look at the simplest adverbs, i.e. those derived from adjectives, and then to list the most common adverbs of time and place (see Time-Manner-Place rule under 9.4.1) as well as interrogative adverbs. Otherwise mastering adverbs is really chiefly a matter of extending your vocabulary.

9.1 Adverbs that are also adjectives

The adverb and adjective are identical in German, i.e. German does not have any equivalent of the English ‘-ly’, e.g.

Er ist sehr langsam. Er fährt sehr langsam.
He is very slow. He drives very slowly.

Adverbs, unlike adjectives, do not inflect, which is why in the following sentences furchtbar, schrecklich, scheußlich, typisch and wahnsinnig have no ending but nett, teuer, bitter and deutsch do:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eine furchtbar nette Frau</td>
<td>an awfully nice woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ein schrecklich teures Auto</td>
<td>a terribly expensive car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ein scheußlich bitterer Geschmack</td>
<td>a horribly bitter taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ein typisch deutsches Gericht</td>
<td>a typically German dish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ein wahnsinnig interessantes Buch</td>
<td>an awfully interesting book</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Compare the following, where both are adjectives qualifying Geschmack and thus both take an ending:

ein scheußlicher, bitterer Geschmack  a horrible, bitter taste

9.2 **Comparative and superlative of adverbs**

As German makes no distinction between adjectives and adverbs, generally speaking adverbs form their comparative and superlative in the same way as adjectives and this is dealt with under adjectives (see 8.2 and 8.3.2).

9.3 **Intensifying adverbs**

There is a variety of intensifying adverbs, as indeed there is in English too, which are used to qualify other adverbs and adjectives. The following adverbs are very commonly used to intensify adjectives and other adverbs:

- außergewöhnlich  exceptionally
- äußerst  extremely
- besonders  especially, particularly
- enorm  enormously
- furchtbar  frightfully, awfully
- höchst  highly
- scheußlich  horribly
- schrecklich  terribly, awfully
- sehr  very
- wahnsinnig  madly

9.3.1 **How to render ‘especially’**

Take care with translating English ‘especially’. When it is used as an adjectival or adverbial intensifier, besonders is the appropriate word, e.g.

Es war besonders interessant.  
It was especially (particularly) interesting.
But when it stands alone not qualifying an adjective or adverb, i.e. in contexts where ‘especially’ can be substituted by ‘above all’, the expression vor allem is required, e.g.

**Vor allem wenn es regnet.**
Especially when it rains.

**vor allem im Sommer**
especially in (the) summer

### 9.4 Adverbs of time

Adverbiaal expressions of specific time such as ‘last week’, ‘next year’, ‘this weekend’, ‘every day’, of which there are many, are always expressed in the accusative case. This is only obvious, however, with masculine nouns. The determiners and adjectival endings in the nom. and acc. in such cases are identical for feminine and neuter nouns, e.g. letzte Woche (f.), nächstes Jahr (n.), dieses Wochenende (n.), jeden Tag (m.), nächsten Mittwoch (m.).

**Warte bitte einen Augenblick!**
Please wait a moment.

If the adverbial expression of time contains a preposition, the preposition determines the case, e.g. am nächsten Tag (the next day, dat.), um Mitternacht (at midnight, acc.).

A very limited number of adverbial expressions of indefinite or habitual time take the genitive case, e.g. eines Tages (one day), eines Montags (one Monday) and even eines Nachts (one night), despite the fact that it is feminine. Even expressions such as morgens (in the morning[s]) and montags (on Mondays) are derived from genitives too (see 9.4.7).

### 9.4.1 The Time-Manner-Place rule (TMP)

It is good style in German to begin clauses with adverbs of time. It is particularly advisable to do this when there are also adverbs of manner and place in the same clause. German insists on the order Time, Manner, Place whereas English usually has the reverse order, e.g.

```
P       M       T
```

He goes to school by bus every day.
Er fährt jeden Tag mit dem Bus zur Schule.

By beginning clauses with time in German, you then need only concentrate on putting manner and place in the correct order, e.g.

Jeden Tag fährt er mit dem Bus zur Schule.

Notice that if you begin the clause with time, inversion of subject and verb takes place.

Only statements can of course begin with time, never questions, where the verb must be in first position, e.g.

Kommst du morgen mit dem Zug oder mit der Straßenbahn?  
Are you coming by train or tram tomorrow?

9.4.2 Two expressions of time in one clause

When there are two expressions of time in a clause, the general always precedes the particular:

Ich stehe jeden Morgen um sechs Uhr auf.  
Jeden Morgen stehe ich um sechs Uhr auf.  
I get up at six o’clock every morning.

Er liest immer bis Mitternacht.  
He always reads till midnight.

9.4.3 Adverbs of time cannot precede the finite verb

Note that in the previous English sentence the adverb of time occurs between the subject and the finite verb. This is very common in English but is impossible in German because of the necessity for the verb always to stand in second position, e.g.

Er ruft seine Mutter selten/oft an.  
He seldom/often rings his mother.

Er hat mir das Geld nie zurückbezahlt.  
He never paid me back the money.
9.4.4 Word order of adverbs of time and object

When an expression of time occurs in a sentence with a nominal direct object, it precedes the object, not however when the object is pronominal, e.g.

*Ihr müsst heute Abend dieses Kapitel lesen.*
You must read this chapter tonight. (nominal object)

*Ihr müsst es heute Abend lesen.*
You must read it tonight. (pronominal object)

*Ich habe ihm gestern das Geld gegeben.*
I gave him the money yesterday. (both a pronominal and nominal object)

This problem can be avoided by beginning with time:

*Heute Abend müsst ihr dieses Kapitel lesen.*
*Gestern habe ich ihm das Geld gegeben.*

9.4.5 Word order with adverbs of time in coordinate clauses

The coordinating conjunctions *aber, denn, oder, sondern* and *und* do not affect the word order (see 11.1). Thus in the following example *morgen* is taken as the first idea in the new clause and consequently inversion of subject and verb takes place:

*Gestern ist er nach Moskau geflogen, aber morgen kommt er zurück.*
Yesterday he flew to Moscow but he is coming back tomorrow.

A stylistic variant of the above, not placing time at the beginning of each clause, is:

*Er ist gestern nach Moskau geflogen, aber (er) kommt morgen zurück.*
(If *er* is not repeated, no comma should be inserted before *aber.*)

9.4.6 How to translate ‘for’ in expressions of time

Whether ‘for’ in expressions of time is translated, and if so how, depends on the tense of the statement. With reference to the future *auf + acc.* and *für* are interchangeable, e.g.
(Auf/für) wie lange gehst du? Ich gehe auf/für zwei Wochen dahin.
How long are you going for? I'm going there for two weeks.

With reference to past time ‘for’ is not translated, e.g.

Ich bin zwei Wochen da gewesen.
I was there for two weeks.

Er hat zehn Jahre in Schottland gewohnt.
He lived in Scotland for ten years.

But when an action began in the past and has continued into the present, in which case English uses the perfect tense and German uses the present tense, German uses either schon or seit to render ‘for’ (see 10.1.5.3), e.g.

Er wohnt schon zehn Jahre in Schottland.
Er wohnt seit zehn Jahren in Schottland.
He has been living in Scotland for ten years.

Schon, being an adverb itself, is followed by an adverbial expression of time in the accusative case, but seit, being a preposition, puts the adverbial expression that follows it in the dative case. Both schon and seit are commonly used together to render ‘for’ in such expressions too, e.g.

Er wohnt schon seit zehn Jahren in Schottland.

9.4.7 Common adverbial expressions of time

Days of the week (die Wochentage) (see 13.8)

on Sundays sonntags or an Sonntagen etc.
on Mondays montags
on Tuesdays dienstags
on Wednesdays mittwochs
on Thursdays donnerstags
on Fridays freitags
on Saturdays samstags, sonnabends
on Sunday (past and coming) am Sonntag
the Sunday after  
am folgenden Sonntag

Sunday morning, afternoon,  
Sonntagmorgen, -nachmittag, -abend
evening/night  
am Sonntagabend, an Sonntagabenden

on Sunday evenings  
by Sunday  
bis Sonntag

next Sunday  
nächsten Sonntag

last Sunday  
letzten Sonntag

from Sunday (on)  
ab Sonntag/von Sonntag an

on Sundays and holidays  
an Sonn- und Feiertagen

Yesterday, today, tomorrow etc.

According to the pre-1998 spelling (see 2.5) compound expressions such as gestern Morgen were written gestern morgen. This has now changed to reflect the fact that Morgen is a noun and should thus be capitalized, whereas gestern is an adverb and is not capitalized.

yesterday  
gestern

yesterday morning  
gestern Morgen

yesterday afternoon  
gestern Nachmittag

yesterday evening or  
gestern Abend

(more usually) last night  
vorgestern

the day before yesterday  
vorgestern Morgen

the morning of the day  
vorgestern Morgen

before yesterday*  
vorgestern Abend

the evening of the day  
(*In such cases in English we would be more likely to say ‘Wednesday morning/night’ if today were Friday, for example.)

before yesterday*  

the day before yesterday*  

the morning of the day  

before yesterday*  


today  
heute

from today on  
ab heute
this morning/afternoon  heute Morgen/Nachmittag  
tonight, this evening  heute Abend  
tonight (after midnight)  heute Nacht  
last night (after midnight)  heute Nacht  
in a week’s time  heute in 8 Tagen  
in a fortnight’s time  heute in 14 Tagen  
tomorrow  morgen  
tomorrow morning  morgen früh (not morgen Morgen)  
tomorrow afternoon  morgen Nachmittag  
tomorrow evening/night  morgen Abend  
the day after tomorrow  übermorgen  

Periods of the day (die Tageszeiten)  
in the morning(s)  morgens, am Morgen  
in the afternoon(s)  nachmittags, am Nachmittag  
in the evening(s)  abends, am Abend  
at night  nachts, in der Nacht  
during the day  tagsüber  
late in the evening  spät abends, spät am Abend  
at nine in the evening  abends um neun  
early in the morning  früh morgens  
at lunchtime/midday  zu Mittag  
at one o’clock in the morning/a.m.  um ein Uhr nachts  
at five o’clock in the morning/a.m.  um fünf Uhr  
morgens/vormittags  

Weekend (das Wochenende)  
this/next weekend  dieses/nächstes Wochenende
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>German Equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>last weekend</td>
<td>letztes Wochenende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at/on the weekend</td>
<td>am Wochenende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Seasons (die Jahreszeiten)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the summer, winter, autumn, spring</td>
<td>der Sommer, Winter, Herbst, Frühling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in summer etc.</td>
<td>im Sommer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next summer etc.</td>
<td>nächsten Sommer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last summer etc.</td>
<td>letzten Sommer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this summer etc.</td>
<td>diesen Sommer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Now</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>jetzt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from now on</td>
<td>ab jetzt, von nun an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>until now, up to now</td>
<td>bis jetzt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nowadays</td>
<td>heutzutage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now and then</td>
<td>ab und zu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the present time, currently</td>
<td>zur Zeit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hour</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for hours</td>
<td>stundenlang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two hours ago</td>
<td>vor zwei Stunden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in two hours’ time</td>
<td>in zwei Stunden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Day</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one day, morning, evening</td>
<td>eines Tages, Morgens, Abends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that day, morning, evening</td>
<td>an dem Tag, Morgen, Abend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the next day</td>
<td>am nächsten Tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the day after</td>
<td>am Tag danach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the day before</td>
<td>am Tag davor/am vorigen Tag</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
all day, evening
den ganzen Tag, Abend
die ganze Nacht
tagelang
irgendwann, eines Tages
am selben Tag
einmal/zweimal am Tag
täglich, jeden Tag
am Tag danach, am nächsten Tag
am vorigen Tag

**Week**

die ganze Woche
nächste Woche
letzte Woche
in einer Woche
in zwei Wochen, in vierzehn Tagen
innerhalb einer Woche
vor einer Woche
vor vierzehn Tagen
Freitag in einer Woche
während der Woche
wochentags, an Wochentagen
Anfang nächster Woche
Ende letzter Woche
die ganze Woche hindurch
ab nächster Woche
einmal/zweimal in der Woche
einmal/zweimal pro Woche
**Month** (see 13.8)

- this month: diesen Monat
- next month: nächsten Monat
- last month: letzten Monat
- from next month (on): ab nächstem Monat
- in a month’s time: in einem Monat
- within a month: innerhalb eines Monats
- a month ago: vor einem Monat
- for months: monatelang
- once/twice a month: einmal/zweimal im Monat
- at the beginning of January: Anfang Januar
- in the middle of January: Mitte Januar
- at the end of January: Ende Januar
- in January: im Januar

**Year**

- this year: dieses Jahr
- from this year (on): ab diesem Jahr
- next year: nächstes Jahr
- last year: letztes Jahr
- in two years’ time: in zwei Jahren
- two years ago: vor zwei Jahren
- years ago: vor Jahren, Jahre her
- throughout the year: das ganze Jahr hindurch
- once a year: einmal im Jahr
- in the (nineteen) sixties: in den sechziger Jahren
**Holidays (Feiertage)**

- on public holidays: an Feiertagen
- Ascension Day: Himmelfahrt
- All Hallows/All Saints’ Day: Allerheiligen
- (at) Christmas: (zu) Weihnachten
- Christmas Day: erster Weihnachtstag
- Boxing Day: zweiter Weihnachtstag
- New Year’s Eve: Sylvester
- (at) Easter: (zu) Ostern
- (at) Whitsun(tide)/Pentecost: (zu) Pfingsten
- October 3rd: Tag der deutschen Einheit

**Time**

- at the same time: zur gleichen Zeit, gleichzeitig
- some time ago, after some time: vor/nach einiger Zeit
- a little while: ein Weilchen
- a moment: einen Augenblick
- at the moment: zur Zeit
- all the time: die ganze Zeit
- for a long time: lange
- on time: rechtzeitig
- at all times/any time: zu jeder Zeit, jederzeit
- once, one time: einmal
- twice, three times etc.: zweimal, dreimal
- a few/several times: ein paar Mal
- last time: das letzte Mal
- next time: das nächste Mal
- this time: diesmal
twice a day
in the course of time
in the long run

General expressions of time
always
still
not yet
still not
for good
seldom
ever
never
mostly
sometimes
now and again/then
meanwhile
often, more often
once in a while, from time to time
usually
recently
recently, the other day

lately
at the latest
at the earliest
late
these days

twice am Tag
im Laufe der Zeit
auf die Dauer

immer
noch, immer noch, noch stets
noch nicht
immer noch nicht
für immer
selten
je, jemals
nie, niemals, noch nie (see 14.2.g)
meistens
manchmal
ab und zu
inzwischen, mittlerweile
oft, öfter
öfters
gewöhnlich
vor kurzem, kürzlich
neulich (not as recent as vor kurzem)
in letzter Zeit
spätestens
frühstens
zu spät
heutzutage
in (the) future
henceforth, from now on
from then on
high time
for the time being, provisionally
temporarily
since, since then
immediately
presently, in a moment
soon, quickly
soon afterwards
as soon as possible

in Zukunft, künftig
von nun an
von da an
höchste Zeit
vorläufig
vorübergehend
seitdem, seither (lit.)
sofort
gleich
bald
bald danach
so bald wie möglich

9.4.8 Adverbs of time with alternative translations in German

Afterwards

afterwards, after that
dann, danach, nachher

Again

again
wieder
(yet) again
schon wieder
again and again
immer wieder

Before

before, earlier, formerly, previously
früher
(as) (never) before
(wie) (nie) zuvor
before that
davor, vorher
Finally

finally  
zum Schluss, schließlich, letztens
finally, at last  
endlich
eventually  
schließlich

Firstly

firstly  
zuerst
first (as in ‘Show me the letter first’)  
zuerst
for the first time  
zum ersten Mal
firstly (secondly, thirdly etc.)  
erstens (zweitens, drittens etc.)
at first  
anfangs, am Anfang

Then

then  
dann
then, at that time (in the past)  
damals

9.5 Adverbs of place and direction

You will notice in several of the groups of adverbs below that there is a form with and without the preposition nach. In English there is usually only one word to express both place and motion towards a place but in the latter case these German adverbs of direction express motion towards a place by means of nach.

He lives here.  
Er wohnt hier.
How often does he come here?  
Wie oft kommt er hierher? 
(see 9.7.3)
He works there.  
Er arbeitet da/dort.
How does he get there?  
Wie fährt er dahin/dorthin? 
(see 9.7.3)
She’s sitting outside.  
Sie sitzt draußen.
She went outside.
She sleeps upstairs/downstairs.
She went upstairs/downstairs.

(to) here
(to) there
next-door
on this/these
in this/these

Similarly:
on that/those
in that/those
on the left, (turn) left
on the right, (turn) right
to the left
to the right
in the middle
straight ahead
in/at the front
in/at the back
(go) to the front
(go) to the back
upstairs
downstairs
(to) upstairs
(to) downstairs
inside

Sie ging nach draußen. (see 9.7.3)
Sie schläft oben/unten.
Sie ging nach oben/unten. (see 9.7.3)
hierher (see 9.7.3)
dahin, dorthin (see 9.7.3)
nebenan
hierauf (see 7.1.4)
hierin
darauf (see 7.1.4)
darin
links
rechts
nach links
nach rechts
in der Mitte
gera(de)aus
vorn(e)
hinten
nach vorne
nach hinten
oben
unten
nach oben (see 9.7.3 for hinauf)
nach unten
drinnen
Adverbs of manner and degree

Adverbs of manner and degree are too numerous and diverse to list, e.g. mit dem Zug (by train), glücklicherweise (fortunately), mit lauter Stimme (in a loud voice), etc. You are advised to consult a good dictionary for such expressions.

Interrogative adverbs

Interrogative adverbs are those words that introduce questions asking when, where, how and why etc. (see also Interrogative pronouns under 7.5). For interrogative adverbs in indirect questions see 11.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>German</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>outside</td>
<td>draußen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) inside</td>
<td>nach drinnen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) outside</td>
<td>nach draußen (see 9.7.3 for hinaus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home</td>
<td>nach Hause/heim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at home</td>
<td>zu Hause/daheim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>away</td>
<td>weg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far away</td>
<td>weit weg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underway, on the way</td>
<td>unterwegs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uphill</td>
<td>bergauf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>downhill</td>
<td>bergab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>überall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>irgendwo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nowhere</td>
<td>nirgendwo, nirgends</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
where … (to)  wohin, wo … hin (see 9.7.2)
where … from  woher, wo … her (see 9.7.2)

9.7.1 Wie occasionally renders English ‘what’

Wie ist Ihr Name? or Wie heißen Sie?
What is your name?

Otherwise wie means ‘how’ and, like ‘how’ in English, it is often followed by other adverbs, e.g.

(for) how long  wie lange
how much  wie viel
how many  wie viele
how often  wie oft
how far  wie weit

Wie viel hast du für deinen neuen Porsche bezahlt?
How much did you pay for your new Porsche?

Note the following idiomatic ways of asking the date (see 13.8):

Der wievielte ist heute? or Den wievielten haben wir heute?
What is the date today?

9.7.2 Wo, wohin, woher

Whenever wo occurs in a question with a verb of motion designating direction to or from a place, German must use the compounds wohin or woher respectively (compare the use of ‘whither’ and ‘whence’ in archaic English), but two word orders are possible, e.g.

Wo wohnen Sie?
Where do you live?

Wohin gehen Sie? or Wo gehen Sie hin?
Where are you going? ( = whither)

Woher kommen Sie? or Wo kommen Sie her?
Where do you come from? ( = whence)
9.7.3 Hin and her

Hin and her are adverbs that indicate direction away from and towards the speaker respectively. They are most commonly used together with prepositions to form separable prefixes of separable verbs to emphasize movement (see 10.9.1): herab, herauf, heraus, hinein, hinüber, hinunter, e.g.

Bring die Stühle bitte herein!
Please bring the chairs in.

Er ging die Treppe hinauf.
He went up the stairs.

In spoken German both hin and her used in combination with such prepositional prefixes (see 10.9.1.a) are pronounced simply as r, e.g.

Geh rau! (< Geh hinauf), Komm runter! (< Komm herunter),
Raus! (< Hinaus)
Go upstairs, Come down(stairs), Get out.

The prefixes do not always indicate literal but rather figurative movement, e.g.

Was habt ihr herausgefunden?
What did you find out?

Hin and her can act as separable verbal prefixes on their own (see 10.9.1.b), e.g.

Wie hast du das hingekriegt?
How did you manage that?

Gib das her!
Hand it over.

Hin und her is an adverbial expression in itself meaning ‘to and fro’ or ‘back and forth’.
German verbs, just like English verbs, all have tenses which indicate the time of the action being performed, whether it is being performed now, was being performed at some point in the past or will be performed at some point in the future. Every tense in English has a parallel tense in German but it should be noted that one of the most important respects in which these two languages differ from each other is the way in which they use certain tenses, e.g. see the use of the future (10.1.2) and perfect tenses (10.1.5.3).

German, like English, has both regular and irregular verbs. Many grammars of German refer to regular verbs as ‘weak’ verbs, but these terms are synonymous. A regular verb in German is one that uses variations of the ending -te in the past (compare an English verb that adds ‘-ed’, e.g. worked) and forms its past participle by adding -t, e.g. ich wohnte – ‘I lived’, ich habe gewohnt – ‘I have lived’. An irregular verb, also commonly called a strong verb, does not take an ending in the past tenses but usually changes the vowel of the stem in both English and German in the past tenses, e.g. ich fand (I found), ich habe gefunden (I have found). Technically you can make a distinction between an irregular and a strong verb, but in general usage these two terms are treated as synonymous.

All verbs are learnt in their infinitive form, i.e. the form that has not yet defined who is performing the action of the verb, e.g. kaufen = ‘to buy’. Once you employ a verb in a sentence, naming the doer of that verb, you turn that verb into a finite verb and the ending it takes depends on its subject, i.e. ich kaufe = ‘I buy’, du kaufst = ‘you buy’ etc. In German there is a greater variety of such endings than in English.
10.1 Formation of tenses

10.1.1 The present tense

The stem of a verb is what is left when the -en of the infinitive is removed, i.e. trinken > trink-, wohnen > wohn-, finden > find-, kaufen > kauf-. The present tense of most verbs is formed by adding endings to this stem. What follows is the conjugation of a typical regular verb, wohnen (to live), in the present tense.

ich wohne
du wohnst
er wohnt
wir wohnen
ihr wohnt
sie wohnen

In this chapter all verbs will be given as above, i.e. showing six persons of the verb, those being the first, second and third person singular and the first, second and third person plural. A form like er wohnt also represents what is required when the subject is sie (she) and es (it). The same applies to sie wohnen (they live), which also represents Sie wohnen (you live).

A form like er wohnt can be translated in three different ways in English, i.e. ‘he lives’, ‘he is living’ or ‘he does live’, depending on context. This is a complexity of English which does not exist in German, e.g.

**Wo wohnt dein Bruder heutzutage?**
Where is your brother living these days?

**Er wohnt in Amerika.**
He lives/is living in America. (see 10.7)

The same applies to a question. Although we say in English ‘He lives in Germany’, when you ask a question you have to say ‘Where does he live?’, whereas German simply inverts the subject and verb saying ‘Where does he live?’, i.e. Wo wohnt er? Similarly with ‘He is living in Germany’, where the question form in English is ‘Is he still living in Germany?’, i.e. Wohnt er noch in Deutschland?

In spoken German it is very common to drop the -e of the first person, which, if ever done in writing, should be indicated by the use of an apostrophe, though this is not always observed, e.g.
Ich komm’ schon.
I’m coming.

Was mach ich jetzt?
What am I going to do now?

When the stem of a verb ends in -t or -d, an e is inserted between the stem and an -st or a -t ending, e.g. arbeiten (to work) and finden (to find):

- ich arbeite
- du arbeitest
- er arbeitet
- wir arbeiten
- ihr arbeitet
- sie arbeiten
- ich finde
- du findest
- er findet
- wir finden
- ihr findet
- sie finden

Verbs whose stem ends in a consonant + n or m also insert an e before the endings -st and -t in order to make them easier to pronounce, e.g. öffnen (to open) and widmen (to devote):

- ich öffne
- du öffnest
- er öffnet
- wir öffnen
- ihr öffnet
- sie öffnen
- ich widme
- du widmest
- er widmet
- wir widmen
- ihr widmet
- sie widmen

When the stem of a verb ends in -s, -ss, -ß, -tz or -z, the ending used for the second person singular is just -t, not -st as you would expect, which means that the second and third persons look the same, e.g. heißen (to be called) > du/er heißt, reisen (to travel) > du/er reist and sitzen (to sit) > du/er sitzt.

A few verbs end in -eln or -ern, thus not -en as is usually the case. The first person of those ending in -eln drops this e when adding the e-ending of the first person singular, but those in -ern do not, e.g. lächeln (to smile) and wandern (to hike, go walking):

- ich lächle (not lächele)
- du lächelst
- er lächelt
- wir lächeln
- ihr lächelt
- sie lächeln
- ich wandere (not wandre)
- du wanderst
- er wandert
- wir wandern
- ihr wandert
- sie wandern
The present tense of irregular verbs

The real indicator of whether a verb is regular or irregular is how it behaves in the past tenses (see 10.1.4.2). Many verbs that are irregular in the past are regular in the present, e.g. *kommen* which is conjugated in the present like *wohnen* in 10.1.1, but whose past tense is *ich kam*, indicating that it is in fact an irregular verb.

But there are many common irregular verbs that show one of several irregularities in the present tense as well. These are dealt with here. The irregularities usually apply only to the second and third persons singular. One thing is certain with respect to irregular verbs: if a verb is irregular in any of the following ways in the present tense, it is most certainly irregular in the past tenses and will thus be found in the list of irregular verbs under 10.12.1.

Some, but not all, irregular verbs whose stem contains an e change that e to i in the second and third persons singular, e.g. *geben* (to give) and *essen* (to eat):

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ich gebe</td>
<td>ich esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du gibst</td>
<td>du isst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er gibt</td>
<td>er isst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir geben</td>
<td>wir essen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr gebt</td>
<td>ihr esst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie geben</td>
<td>sie essen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nearly all verbs that do this are very common and are thus easily learnt. Here is a list of the most common: *helfen* (to help), *nehmen* (to take), *sprechen* (to speak), *sterben* (to die), *treffen* (to meet), *treten* (to tread, step), *vergessen* (to forget), *werfen* (to throw).

Just *nehmen* (to take) and *treten* (to tread) show further idiosyncrasies of spelling in the second and third persons singular:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ich nehme</td>
<td>ich trete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du nimmst</td>
<td>du trittst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er nimmt</td>
<td>er tritt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir nehmen</td>
<td>wir treten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr nehmt</td>
<td>ihr tretet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie nehmen</td>
<td>sie treten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A much smaller number of verbs change the e to ie in the second and third persons singular, e.g. *lesen* (to read) and *sehen* (to see):
The following verbs do the same: empfehlen (to recommend), geschehen (to happen), stehlen (to steal).

A sizeable number of irregular verbs whose stem contains an a add an Umlaut to the a in the second and third persons singular in the present tense; there are also a couple with au in their stem that do likewise, as well as one with o that takes an Umlaut, e.g. schlaften (to sleep), laufen (to run) and stoßen (to shove):

- ich schlafe
- du schläfst
- er schläft
- wir schlafen
- ihr schlafet
- sie schlafen

- ich laufe
- du läufst
- er läuft
- wir laufen
- ihr lauft
- sie laufen

- ich stoße
- du stößt
- er stößt
- wir stoßen
- ihr stoßt
- sie stoßen

Here is a list of the most common verbs that do this: braten (to roast), fahren (to drive, travel), fallen (to fall), fangen (to catch), halten (to hold, stop), laden (to load), lassen (to leave), raten (to guess, advise), saufen (to booze), tragen (to carry), wachsen (to grow), waschen (to wash). Of these verbs just halten, laden and raten have exceptional endings in the second and third persons singular because their stems end in -t or -d, and thus an e might otherwise have been expected before the -st ending of the second person and an e + t in the third person, i.e.

- ich halte
- du hältst
- er hältt
- wir halten
- ihr haltet
- sie halten

- ich lade
- du lädst
- er lädt
- wir laden
- ihr ladet
- sie laden

- ich rate
- du rätst
- er rät
- wir raten
- ihr ratet
- sie raten

The verb tun (to do) is only irregular in the present in that it ends in -n, not -en, but to conjugate it you simply remove the -n and add the usual endings, as with wohnen above, e.g.
Verbs

ich tue
du tust
er tut
wir tun
ihr tut
sie tun

The verb **haben** (to have) shows irregularities in the second and third persons singular that are peculiar to it alone:

ich habe
du hast
er hat
wir haben
ihr habt
sie haben

The verb **werden** (to become, get) also shows irregularities in the second and third persons singular that are peculiar to it alone:

ich werde
du wirst
er wird
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden

The verb **sein** (to be), the most irregular verb in both English and German, is conjugated like no other verb in the present tense; compare the English equivalents of the following forms:

ich bin I am
du bist you are
er ist he is
wir sind we are
ihr seid you are
sie sind they are

The above irregularities in the forming of the present tense of German verbs tend to occur overwhelmingly in very commonly used verbs, which is what ultimately makes remembering them easy – you will simply be confronted with these ‘exceptions’ so frequently that they will cease to look exceptional.
10.1.2 The future tense

Although most German grammars will tell you that the future tense in German is expressed by werden + infinitive, which is comparable to English ‘will’ + infinitive, in reality the situation is not quite so simple, as the present tense is commonly used in German to express the future (see 10.1.2.2). Other than in those cases described under 10.1.2.2, werden is what you will require to express ‘will’. It is conjugated as follows:

ich werde
du wirst
er wird
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden

Was wirst du in dem Fall machen?
What will you do in that case?

Das wird nicht helfen.
That won’t help.

English, in addition to ‘will’ and the present tense, often uses ‘to go’ to express the future. German does not do this. In such cases you must choose between werden and the present tense according to the rules given here and in 10.1.2.2, e.g.

Er wird an der Universität Bremen studieren.
He’s going to study at the University of Bremen.

Ich mähe morgen den Rasen.
I’m going to mow the lawn tomorrow.

10.1.2.1 Other uses of werden

a) Werden, like ‘will’, is also used in requests, where it is interchangeable with würde (would), which sounds even politer, e.g.

Wirst du mir bitte helfen?
Will you please help me?

Würdest du mir bitte helfen?
Would you please help me?
b) **Werden** is commonly used in combination with **wohl** to render ‘will probably’ where this means ‘is most likely to’, e.g.

**Otto wird wohl im Wirtshaus sein.**
Otto will be in the pub./Otto is sure to be in the pub.

See too the use of **werden** in the future perfect tense 10.1.7.

c) **Werden** is a somewhat overworked verb in German. It has three distinctly different functions but its meaning is always clear from the context:

i) First and foremost it is a normal verb meaning ‘to become’ or ‘to get’ (in the sense of ‘to become’), e.g.

**Mein Sohn ist Soldat geworden.**
My son has become a soldier.

**Es wird im Januar sehr früh dunkel.**
It gets dark very early in January.

ii) It is used as an auxiliary verb to render ‘to be’ in the passive in German (see 10.4).

iii) It is used as an auxiliary verb to render ‘will’ in the future tense.

**10.1.2.2 Use of the present tense to express the future**

It is important to note that German uses the present tense to express the future when future time is clearly indicated in some other way, i.e. most usually by an adverbial expression of time; as the second example below illustrates, this convention occurs in English too but is less common in English than in German, e.g.

**Das tu’ ich morgen.**
I’ll do it tomorrow.

**Er kommt nächste Woche zurück.**
He’ll be returning next week./He’s coming back next week.
10.1.3 The imperative

The imperative is the command form of the verb, i.e. that form used when issuing an order to someone to ‘stand up’, ‘sit down’, ‘come in’ etc. Because this is said to someone you are directly addressing, in other words it is short for ‘you stand up’ etc., and because German has three words for you, each with its own verb form, there are three ways of issuing commands in German. The verb ‘to stand/get up’ is aufstehen and the three ways of saying ‘stand/get up’ are

Steh auf!
Steht auf!
Stehen Sie auf!

The first is said to someone you are on du terms with (see 7.1.1.1), the second is said to two or more people you are on du terms with and the third is said to one or more people you are still on Sie terms with (see 7.1.1.1). If issuing a command to a group of people, some of whom you address individually as du and others as Sie, you need to make a diplomatic choice; if those you know well clearly outnumber those you don’t, you might opt for the second form, but if not, you might prefer to play it safe and opt for the third form. What is quite common in all situations, both familiar and polite, is simply to use the infinitive as a non-personal imperative form, e.g.

Bitte, aufstehen!
Please stand/get up.

This form is commonly used for impersonal public signs, e.g.

Bitte) nicht rauchen!
(Please) don’t smoke.

It is most usual, although not always consistently observed (particularly when the sentence is longer), to use an exclamation mark after imperatives in German.

Irregular verbs that change the e of their stem to i or ie in the present tense (see 10.1.1.1) also apply that change in the du form of the imperative, e.g.

Gib es ihm!
Give it to him.

Lies es mir bitte vor!
Please read it out to me.
Irregular verbs that change the a of their stem to ä in the present tense (see 10.1.1.1) do not apply that change in the du form of the imperative, e.g.

**Fahr nicht so schnell!**
Don’t drive so fast.

The du form of the imperative of all verbs, except those that change e to i or ie, can end in -e but this is most usually dropped in spoken German, except when the stem ends in -t, -d or -ig, e.g.

**Komme/komm sofort!**
Come immediately.

**Antworte mir!**
Answer me.

**Lade das nicht runter!**
Don’t download that.

**Entschuldige!**
Excuse me.

The imperative of sein (to be) is totally irregular and is particularly common, e.g.

**Sei nicht böse!**
**Seid nicht böse!**
**Seien Sie nicht böse!**
Don’t be angry.

When adding bitte (please) to a command, it can go in one of three places in German whereas in English it can only go at the beginning or the end; the third option is the most common in German, e.g.

**Bitte, komm nicht zu spät nach Hause!**
**Komm nicht zu spät nach Hause, bitte!**
**Komm bitte nicht zu spät nach Hause!**
Please don’t come home late.

There is also a first person plural of the imperative used, as is English ‘Let’s …’, to express a suggestion to do something. In German this is identical to the wir question form of the verb, but the intonation in speech and the exclamation mark in writing clearly distinguish this form from the question, e.g.

**Gehen wir jetzt nach Hause!**
Let’s go home now.
Compare:

Gehen wir jetzt nach Hause?
Are we going home now?

The first person plural of the imperative is just as commonly expressed as

Lass uns jetzt nach Hause gehen!

10.1.4 The imperfect tense

The imperfect tense is sometimes referred to as the preterite or the simple past tense, contrasting with the perfect or compound past tense.

The difference between a regular and an irregular verb really comes to the fore in the past tenses. Verbs like kommen and finden, and many others, don’t differ from regular verbs in the present, but they certainly do in the past (i.e. kam, fand). All English irregular verbs are regular in the present, their irregularity only showing itself in the past, e.g. ‘came’, ‘found’.

10.1.4.1 The imperfect tense of regular verbs

The indicator of a regular verb in English is the ending ‘-ed’ in the past, while the equivalent of this in German is -te, -test, -te, -ten, -tet or -ten, depending on the person of the verb, e.g.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German verb</th>
<th>English verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wohnen (to live)</td>
<td>reden (to talk)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ich wohnte</td>
<td>ich redete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du wohntest</td>
<td>du redetest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er wohnte</td>
<td>er redete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir wohnten</td>
<td>wir redeten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr wohntet</td>
<td>ihr redetet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie wohnten</td>
<td>sie redeten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The endings all require an e before them when the stem of the verb ends in -d or -t, as illustrated by reden and arbeiten.

Parallel with what is the case in the present tense (10.1.1), a form like er wohnte translates ‘he lived’, ‘he was living’ and ‘he did live’, depending on context, and thus a question such as Wo wohnte er damals? can be translated as either ‘Where was he living/did he live at that time?’ (see 10.1.5.3
for uses of the perfect tense). In fact an imperfect form like er wohnte can even render English ‘used to live’, e.g. Da wohnte er früher (He used to live there).

### 10.1.4.2 The imperfect tense of irregular verbs

An irregular verb is any verb that does not form its past tense by adding -te, -test, -te, -ten, -tet or -ten in the imperfect. The most common form of irregularity in the imperfect is the changing of the vowel in the stem of the verb (called Ablaut or vowel gradation), exactly as in English where we say ‘came’ (not ‘comed’), found (not ‘finded’) etc. There are seven patterns (or Ablautreihen) of the so-called strong verb; it is usual to list them as follows, where the fourth column contains the past participle (called Partizip II in German) of the verbs in question (see perfect tense 10.1.5). Group 1, verbs with ei in the infinitive, contains two patterns, as does group 7 where the past participle contains the same vowel as the infinitive, i.e. a:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>present</th>
<th>imperfect</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>schreiben</td>
<td>schreibt</td>
<td>schrieb</td>
<td>geschrieben</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>beißen</td>
<td>beißt</td>
<td>biss</td>
<td>gebissen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>fliegen</td>
<td>fliegt</td>
<td>flog</td>
<td>geflogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>trinken</td>
<td>trinkt</td>
<td>trank</td>
<td>getrunken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>sprechen</td>
<td>spricht</td>
<td>sprach</td>
<td>gesprochen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>geben</td>
<td>gibt</td>
<td>gab</td>
<td>gegeben</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>fahren</td>
<td>fährt</td>
<td>fuhr</td>
<td>gefahren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>schlafen</td>
<td>schläft</td>
<td>schlief</td>
<td>geschlafen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fangen</td>
<td>fängt</td>
<td>fing</td>
<td>gefangen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The full conjugation of an irregular verb in the imperfect looks like this – note that the first and third persons singular are identical:

- ich schrieb I wrote/was writing/did write
- du schriebst
- er schrieb
- wir schrieben
- ihr schriebt
- sie schrieben

If the stem of the imperfect ends in -d or -t, an e must be inserted between the stem and the ending in the second person singular and plural, as illustrated here by finden (group 3) and halten (group 7):
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German verb stem</th>
<th>English translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ich fand</td>
<td>I found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du fandest</td>
<td>you found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er fand</td>
<td>he found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir fanden</td>
<td>we found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr fandet</td>
<td>you (pl.) found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie fanden</td>
<td>they found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ich hielt</td>
<td>I held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du hieltest</td>
<td>you held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er hielt</td>
<td>he held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir hielten</td>
<td>we held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr hielten</td>
<td>you (pl.) held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie hielt</td>
<td>they held</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the stem of the imperfect ends in -s, an e must be inserted between the stem and the ending in the second person singular, as illustrated here by lesen (group 5):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German verb stem</th>
<th>English translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ich las</td>
<td>I read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du lasest</td>
<td>you read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er las</td>
<td>he read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir lasen</td>
<td>we read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr last</td>
<td>you (pl.) read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie lasen</td>
<td>they read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You cannot tell from an infinitive whether a verb is regular or irregular. *Reisen* (to travel) and *greifen* (to grab) both contain an *ei*, just as *sagen* (to say) and *tragen* (to carry, wear) both contain an *a* and *kaufen* and *laufen* an *au* – nothing here tells you that the former in each case is a regular verb and the latter a strong verb. *Reisen* (to travel), *sagen* (to say) and *kaufen* (to buy) are regular verbs and have a past in *-te* etc. whereas *greifen* is a group 1 irregular verb that has a past like *beißen*, *tragen* is a group 6 irregular verb that has a past like *fahren* and *laufen* is a group 7 irregular verb that has a past like *schlafen*, i.e. *griff*, *trug* and *lief*. You simply have to learn whether a verb is regular or irregular and, if irregular, in which way it is irregular, but the number of irregular verbs is quite finite.

### 10.1.4.3 Use of the imperfect tense

Although there are many similarities between English and German in the way in which the imperfect tense is formed, the two languages differ markedly from each other in the way in which they use this tense. The imperfect of most verbs is not nearly as frequently used in speech as the perfect is (see 10.1.5.3). Where it is used most is in relating a narrative of past events in writing. Let’s assume you’re reading the story of Little Red Riding Hood, which might start like this:

**Eines Tages ging Rotkäppchen in den Wald. Sie wollte zu ihrer Großmutter gehen und pflückte unterwegs Blumen für**
Although it is not at all impossible for the imperfect to be used in this way in speech too, if Little Red Riding Hood were telling the tale herself to someone, it would be more usual for her to use the perfect tense. But there is one notable exception to the tendency to use the perfect tense in speech instead of the imperfect. Although you should be careful to be consistent in your use of tense and not mix the two (i.e. don’t say Plötzlich ist von hinter einem Baum ein Wolf hervorgesprungen, der sie erschreckte or Plötzlich sprang von hinter einem Baum ein Wolf hervor, der sie erschreckt hat), it is most usual in spoken German to use the imperfect of sein, haben, werden and all modals while putting all other verbs in the perfect, in which case the following oral version of the above narrative (and thus it is in the first person) is permissible too, despite reverting to the imperfect of wollen, sein and haben:

Ich bin eines Tages in den Wald gegangen. Ich wollte zu meiner Großmutter gehen und habe unterwegs Blumen für sie gepflückt. Plötzlich ist von hinter einem Baum ein Wolf hervorgesprungen, der mich erschreckt hat. Er war groß und stark und hatte Hunger ...

You are more likely to hear the imperfect being used in the speech of northern Germans than southern Germans, as the imperfect has died out in all southern dialects and thus this use of the perfect in dialect is often reflected in the standard German of southern Germans, even being applied to auxiliary verbs.

Getting used to consistently using the perfect instead of the imperfect in speech is not easy for English speakers as the two tenses are not interchangeable in English. English has a rule that if the time of an event that occurred in the past is mentioned, then the imperfect must be used, but if the time is omitted, the perfect is required, e.g.

He returned from Hamburg yesterday.
He has returned from Hamburg.
He has returned from Hamburg yesterday. (not grammatical)

This distinction is not made in German, e.g.

Er kam gestern von Hamburg zurück. (written narrative form)
Er ist gestern von Hamburg zurückgekommen. (most usual spoken form)
Er ist von Hamburg zurückgekommen.
The final sentence can be translated either as ‘He has returned from Hamburg’ or as ‘He returned from Hamburg’, depending on the context.

This is the golden rule for choosing the correct past tense to use in German to render a given past tense form in English: an English perfect is always rendered by a perfect in German, whereas an English imperfect can be rendered either by an imperfect or a perfect in German, but more usually the latter in speech, except where sein, haben, werden and the modals are involved, in which case you can choose which tense you use, though these days the imperfect is more common in such cases. For example:

**Sie hat seinen Namen vergessen.** *(perfect)*
She has forgotten his name. *(perfect)*

**Sie vergaß seinen Namen.** *(imperfect – more usual in a written narrative)*

**Sie hat seinen Namen vergessen.** *(perfect – more usual in speech)*
She forgot his name. *(imperfect)*

**Er war furchtbar schüchtern.** *(imperfect – usual in both speech and writing)*

**Er ist furchtbar schüchtern gewesen.** *(perfect – possible in speech)*
He was terribly shy. *(imperfect)*

On the one hand, what is expected of us here in German is easier than English as you can generally simply stick to using the perfect in all situations and you will never be wrong. On the other hand, the perfect is a much more complicated tense to form in German than in English as you not only have to keep in mind whether a verb requires haben or sein in its perfect tense (see 10.1.5.2), but you have to suspend the past participle till the end of the clause and thus have extra issues of word order to address. Nevertheless, this is a matter you have to come to terms with very early in the learning of German if your German is ever to sound natural. If asked, for example, how you say ‘I saw him in town yesterday’ get used to making your immediate response this: **Ich habe ihn gestern in der Stadt gesehen** and not **Ich sah ihn gestern in der Stadt**, even though the latter is not strictly speaking incorrect.

This preference for the perfect over the imperfect applies equally to the passive voice in spoken German, a fact which is frequently overlooked by non-natives (see 10.4).
10.1.5 The perfect tense

The perfect tense is sometimes referred to as the present perfect or the compound past tense, contrasting with the imperfect or simple past tense. In English it is formed by combining a finite form of the verb ‘to have’ with the past participle, e.g. ‘He has played’ or alternatively ‘He has been playing’. German is similar in the way in which it forms this tense, e.g. Er hat gespielt, where it is immediately obvious the two English forms, where the second is the progressive form, are both rendered by the one form in German. There is a parallel here in the present and imperfect in English (see 10.1.1 and 10.1.4.1). There are two complications in forming the perfect tense in German: firstly you need to derive the correct form of the past participle from the infinitive of the verb concerned, and secondly you need to decide whether the auxiliary verb it is to be used in conjunction with is haben, as in English, or sein, an option which no longer exists in English.

10.1.5.1 Deriving the past participle of a verb from its infinitive

To derive the past participle of a regular verb, you take the stem and add ge- to the beginning and -t to the end of it, e.g.

spielen > gespielt (played), kaufen > gekauft (bought), loben > gelobt (praised)

Where the stem ends in -d, -t or a consonant + n, you must add -et, e.g.

reden > geredet (talked), beten > gebetet (prayed), regnen > geregnet (rained)

The past participles of all strong verbs, those belonging to groups 1 to 7 (see 10.1.4.2), start with ge- and, like many English irregular verbs, end in -en, and the vowel of the stem depends on which group of strong verbs the verb in question belongs to, e.g.

schreiben > geschrieben (written), stehlen > gestohlen (stolen), kommen > gekommen (come)

Any verb that starts with one of the following unstressed inseparable prefixes, whether regular or irregular, does not add ge-, which would add a second unstressed prefix and thus is avoided, e.g.

be-, emp-, ent-, er-, ge-, miss-, ver-, zer-
regular verbs:

bezahlen > bezahlt (paid), erreichen > erreicht (reached)

irregular verbs:

empfehlen > empfohlen (recommended), verstehen > verstanden (understood)

All verbs that end in -ieren, most of which are derived from French and are regular, omit the ge- prefix as the stress is on the last syllable of the past participle; this is intended to avoid a cluster of unstressed syllables preceding the final stressed syllable, e.g.

studieren > studiert (studied), organisieren > organisiert
(organized)

10.1.5.2 Use of haben or sein as the auxiliary verb in the perfect tense

One of the hardest aspects of German to master is when to use haben versus sein in the perfect tense. The following is the basic rule (but in practice there are numerous cases that do not seem to fit the rule): all transitive verbs take haben and all verbs of motion and verbs that indicate a change of state take sein as their auxiliary in the perfect tense, e.g.

lesen (to read, a transitive verb)

ich habe gelesen I have read (but also ‘I read’ and ‘I was reading’)
du hast gelesen
er hat gelesen
wir haben gelesen
ihr habt gelesen
sie haben gelesen

kommen (to come, a verb of motion)

ich bin gekommen I have come (but also ‘I came’ and ‘I was coming’)
du bist gekommen
er ist gekommen
wir sind gekommen
ihr seid gekommen
sie sind gekommen
sterben (to die, a verb of change of state)

ich bin gestorben I have died (but also ‘I died’ and ‘I was dying’)
du bist gestorben
er ist gestorben
wir sind gestorben
ihr seid gestorben
sie sind gestorben

All verbs which take sein in the perfect tense are intransitive (see 10.11), which is not to say that all intransitive verbs take sein, but only those indicating motion or a change of state. Lachen, for example, is an intransitive verb (you can’t laugh something) but it takes haben, e.g. Ich habe gelacht (I have laughed).

Whether a verb requires haben or sein in the perfect tense has to do with whether the verb concerned is a verb of motion or change of state. It is a fact that the most common verbs that take sein are irregular, as the two previous examples illustrate. For this reason most German grammars refer you to their list of irregular verbs (see 10.12.1) where the fourth column, that containing the past participles, indicates by means of ist (other books use a variety of symbols) whether sein is the required auxiliary. As regular verbs are never listed in a grammar, simply because their number is infinite and you can derive their past tenses for yourself, you will seldom ever get to see a list of regular verbs that require sein in the perfect tense because they indicate motion or a change of state. The following is such a list although quite a number of the verbs in it are not particularly common.

10.1.5.2.1 Regular verbs that take sein

See 10.1.5.2.4 for an explanation of the asterisks.

abflauen to die down, abate
abmagern to thin off, become skinny
abstürzen to crash
aufflammen to flare up
aufrücken to approach, close ranks
auftauchen to turn up, surface
aufwachen to wake up
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ausbluten</td>
<td>to bleed to death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ausrasten</td>
<td>to blow one's top</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begegnen</td>
<td>to bump into, meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>driften</td>
<td>to drift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>einrosten</td>
<td>to rust up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>einrücken</td>
<td>to move in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entwischen</td>
<td>to escape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eskalieren</td>
<td>to escalate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explodieren</td>
<td>to explode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folgen</td>
<td>to follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glücken</td>
<td>to be a success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heimkehren</td>
<td>to return home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irren</td>
<td>to roam, wander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kentern</td>
<td>to capsize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kippen</td>
<td>to tip over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>klettern</td>
<td>to climb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kollabieren</td>
<td>to collapse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kollidieren</td>
<td>to collide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>landen</td>
<td>to land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paddeln*</td>
<td>to paddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passieren</td>
<td>to happen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platzen</td>
<td>to burst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radeln *</td>
<td>to cycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rattern *</td>
<td>to rattle along</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reisen</td>
<td>to travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rodeln *</td>
<td>to toboggan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rudern *</td>
<td>to row</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.1.5.2.2 Use of sein or haben with derived verbs

Whether a verb takes sein or haben is determined by the meaning of the verb (i.e. whether it indicates motion or a change of state or not), not by its form. Thus, not only is the fact that a verb is regular or not irrelevant to what auxiliary is required, but many new German verbs are derived from a basic infinitive by means of a whole series of separable (see 10.9.1) and inseparable prefixes (see 10.9.2). Adding such a prefix to a verb, whether it be regular or irregular, can so change the meaning of the verb that where the root verb requires sein, the derived verb does not, or vice versa. For example, kommen (to come) is a verb of motion
that requires **sein**, but **bekommen** (to get) is a transitive verb that no longer bears any semantic relationship to **kommen** and thus it requires **haben**, e.g.

*Er ist spät nach Hause gekommen.*
He got home late.

*Ich habe Geld von meiner Tante bekommen.*
I got money from my aunt.

Equally, **brennen** (to burn) is an intransitive verb that does not indicate motion or a change of state and thus requires **haben**, but **niederbrennen** (to burn down) can be used as an intransitive verb that does indicate a change of state and thus requires **sein**, or it can be used transitively, in which case it requires **haben**, e.g.

*Das Haus hat stundenlang gebrannt.* (state unchanged)
The house burnt for hours.

*Das Haus ist leider niedergebrannt.* (change of state)
The house unfortunately burnt down.

**Rechtsradikale haben das Asylantenheim niedergebrannt.** (used transitively)
Neo-Nazis burnt down the home for asylum seekers.

**Stehen** (to stand) is another example of an intransitive verb that neither indicates motion nor a change of state and thus requires **haben**, but **aufstehen** (to get up/stand up) indicates a change of state (or is it motion?) and requires **sein**, e.g.

*Er hat sehr lange vor dem Geschäft gestanden.*
He stood in front of the shop for ages.

*Er ist jeden Morgen um sieben Uhr aufgestanden.*
He got up at seven o’clock every morning.

In southern Germany and Austria the three verbs of position **liegen** (to lie), **sitzen** (to sit) and **stehen** (to stand) take **sein** in the perfect but in northern and standard German they take **haben**.

**10.1.5.2.3 Verbs of motion that take haben when used transitively**

A number of verbs in the list in 10.12.1 have **hat/ist** before their past participle. This means there is a choice of auxiliary depending on the meaning of the verb, i.e. when it is used as a verb of motion it requires **sein**, but if
used transitively it requires haben. Fahren, for example, normally means ‘to drive’ or ‘to go (by vehicle)’ to a place, in which case it acts as a verb of motion and takes sein, but if you drive a car, the verb has an object, is thus transitive and takes haben, e.g.

**Er ist sofort nach Hause gefahren.**
He drove home straight away.

**Ich habe noch nie einen Mercedes gefahren.**
I’ve never ever driven a Mercedes.

### 10.1.5.2.4 Verbs of motion that take haben or sein when used intransitively

The presence of hat/ist before a past participle in the list of verbs in 10.12.1 indicates a different distinction in the case of a few verbs. Take schwimmen, for example. Schwimmen can never be used as a transitive verb but it can indicate either motion from x to z or merely where the action took place; in the former case it requires sein and in the latter haben, e.g.

**Er ist von hier bis zur Insel da drüben geschwommen.**
He swam from here to that island over there.

**Wir haben noch nie in der Ostsee geschwommen.**
We have never ever swum in the Baltic Sea.

There are also regular verbs where the same distinction is made (see those marked * in the list in 10.1.5.2.1). Segeln is one such verb as the following examples illustrate:

**Wir sind in den Ferien nach Schweden gesegelt.**
We sailed to Sweden in the holidays.

**Wir haben jeden Sommer vor der schwedischen Küste gesegelt.**
We sailed off the coast of Sweden every summer.

### 10.1.5.3 Use of the perfect tense

This tense is used much more in German than in English. The rules of English grammar demand that you use the imperfect when the time of an action performed in the past is mentioned, but German knows no such restriction and prefers to use the perfect, particularly in speech (this issue is dealt with in detail under 10.1.4.3). All that needs to be said about the
difference in use between the perfect in English and German that is not
dealt with under 10.1.4.3 is the following.

The rule that an English perfect is always rendered by a perfect in German
has one exception: when an action that began in the past continues into
the present, German uses the present tense as the action of the verb is seen
to be still ongoing, e.g.

**Ich lerne seit zwei Jahren Deutsch.**
I have been learning German for two years (and am still learning it).

Keeping in mind that the perfect is the most usual way of expressing a past
event in spoken German, the following two sentences are synonymous,
despite the fact that the first sentence might look as if it means ‘I have learnt
German for two years’, but this is synonymous with ‘I have been learning
German for two years’ and is thus expressed as above.

**Ich habe zwei Jahre lang Deutsch gelernt.** (It’s common to insert
lang.)

**Ich lernte zwei Jahre lang Deutsch.**
I learnt German for two years (but am no longer learning it).

See 10.1.6 for a parallel construction in rendering the English pluperfect.

### 10.1.6 The pluperfect tense

The pluperfect tense is sometimes referred to as the past perfect. If the
(present) perfect is ‘I have done/seen’ then the past perfect is ‘I had
done/seen’, i.e. it is the past in the past. It refers to an action having been
performed prior to another action that occurred in the past, e.g.

**Als sie aufstand, hatte ihr Mann schon gefrühstückt.**
When she got up her husband had already had breakfast.

As in English, the pluperfect is formed by ‘had + past participle’ with the
added complexity that ‘had’ is not necessarily **hatte**, but may be **war** in the
case of a verb of motion or change of state, e.g.

**Er war schon um fünf Uhr aufgestanden.**
He had already got up at five o’clock.

Use of the pluperfect is identical in both languages with the following two
exceptions. When an action had already commenced in the past, prior to
another action occurring in the past, and the first action was still being
performed, that ongoing action is expressed in German by the imperfect,
not the pluperfect; this is the past tense of the construction discussed in 10.1.5.3, e.g.

\textbf{Er lernte seit sechs Jahren Deutsch, als er endlich seine} 
\textbf{Großeltern in Deutschland besuchte.}

He had been learning German for six years (and was still learning it), when he finally visited his grandparents in Germany.

The only other difference from English with regard to the pluperfect you need to be aware of is when a pluperfect subjunctive (10.3.2.1) is required in German as this is identical to the pluperfect indicative in English, e.g.

\textbf{Wenn ich das gewusst hätte, wäre ich nicht in Urlaub gegangen.} (i.e. hätte not hatte)
If I had known that I would not have gone on holiday.

\textbf{Wenn er im Unfall umgekommen wäre, wäre seine Frau in einer sehr schwierigen Lage gewesen.} (i.e. wäre not war)
If he had died in the accident his wife would have been in a very difficult situation.

\textbf{10.1.7 The future perfect tense}

The future perfect is formed by combining werden (will) with the so-called perfective infinitive (i.e. past participle plus haben or sein, see 10.2.2) which renders English ‘will have done’, where ‘done’ stands for any verb, e.g.

\textbf{Sie wird bestimmt schon fürs Wochenende eingekauft haben.}
She will definitely have already shopped for the weekend.

\textbf{Er wird schon in Urlaub gegangen sein.}
He will already have gone off on holiday.

\textbf{10.1.8 The conditional tense}

The conditional is rendered in English by ‘would’ + infinitive and thus in German by würde + infinitive (i.e. the subjunctive of werden); it is called the conditional as it is used in combination with an if-clause (thus in German a wenn-clause) which states the condition under which the action would be performed, e.g.
Ich würde mitgehen, wenn ich Zeit hätte.
I would go along if I had the time.

When the infinitive that follows würde is haben or sein, it is preferable in German to use hätte and wäre instead of würde haben and würde sein respectively, although the latter do exist, e.g.

Wärest du damit zufrieden? (< Würdest du damit zufrieden sein?)
Would you be satisfied with that?

Ich hätte Zeit, wenn ich keine Kinder hätte. (< Ich würde Zeit haben, …)
I would have time if I didn’t have kids.

The subjunctive form of mögen is möchte, which renders ‘would like’, e.g.

Ich möchte heute Abend Kalbfleisch essen.
I would like to have veal tonight.

In shops the form hätte gern is commonly used when requesting something from a shop assistant, e.g.

Ich hätte gern 750 Gramm Kalbfleisch.
I would like 750 grams of veal, please. (bitte is not necessary with hätte gern)

10.1.9 The conditional perfect tense

The conditional perfect in English is formed by combining ‘would’ with the so-called perfective infinitive thereby rendering ‘would have done’, where ‘done’ stands for any verb. This would normally give you in German würde gemacht haben, or würde gegangen sein in the case of a verb that takes sein in the perfect tenses, but instead of doing that German has a preference here for the following: würde haben is contracted to hätte and würde sein to wäre, which reduces the number of verbs you have to cope with in these otherwise quite complicated constructions, e.g.

Sie hätte bestimmt schon fürs Wochenende eingekauft, wenn …
(= Sie würde bestimmt schon fürs Wochenende eingekauft haben, wenn …)
She would definitely already have shopped for the weekend if …
Er wäre schon in Urlaub gegangen, wenn …
(= Er würde schon in Urlaub gegangen sein, wenn …)
He would already have gone off on holiday if …

10.1.9.1 Sequence of tenses with the conditional

When dealing with complex sentences in the conditional you must make sure you use the right sequence of tense, something which English speakers consistently get wrong in English but which you must get right in German. Look at the following examples:

If he went to Italy in February he would still find it a bit cold.
If he had gone to Italy in February he would still have found it a bit cold.

The correct sequence of tense refers to the fact that in the first example ‘went’ in the first clause must be followed by ‘would find’ in the second clause; in the second example ‘had gone’ must be followed by ‘would have found’ in the second clause. The problem lies in the fact that English speakers are quite capable of using a hybrid of these two, e.g. ‘If he had gone to Italy in February he would still find it a bit cold’ or ‘If he went to Italy in February he would still have found it a bit cold’. You cannot do this in German; only the following are possible as German translations of the above:

Wenn er im Februar nach Italien ginge/gehen würde, würde er es noch ein bisschen kalt finden.
Wenn er im Februar nach Italien gegangen wäre, hätte er es noch ein bisschen kalt gefunden.

Here’s another example of the problem:

Ich würde ihm helfen, wenn ich könnte.
I would help him if I could.

Ich hätte ihm geholfen, wenn ich ihm hätte helfen können.
I would have helped him if I could have/had been able to.

Both the following variants in English do not observe the correct sequence of tenses:

I would help him if I could have.
I would have helped him if I could.
The six modal auxiliary verbs of German, generally referred to simply as modal verbs, differ from all other verbs in a number of ways:

1. They are conjugated in the present tense like no other verbs: there is a difference in vowel between the singular and the plural, the usual endings of the present tense do not apply in the sing., and the first and third persons sing. are the same.
2. Despite their highly irregular present tense forms, modal verbs have more or less regular imperfect forms and past participles.
3. Their past participles are not commonly used because of the frequency of the so-called double infinitive construction.
4. When a modal is the finite verb in a clause and has an infinitive dependent on it, that infinitive is never preceded by zu (see 10.5.2).
5. They translate idiosyncratically.

Modal verbs are regarded as auxiliary verbs as they are always used in combination with the infinitive of another verb which is either present or implied, e.g.

A: *Musst du gehen?* B: *Ja, ich muss (gehen)*.
A: Must you go? B: Yes, I must (go).

These verbs are best dealt with one by one as there are features that are unique to each verb.

a) *dürfen* (to be allowed to)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ich darf</td>
<td>ich durfte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du darfst</td>
<td>du durftest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er darf</td>
<td>er durfte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr dürfen</td>
<td>ihr durftet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie dürfen</td>
<td>sie durften</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past participle: *gedurft*

Conditional/subjunctive: *dürfte* (see 10.3.2.1)

This verb in English has the peculiarity that the past tense of ‘may’ is ‘was allowed to’, e.g.
Er darf heute Abend mit uns ins Kino gehen.  
He may/is allowed to go to the movies with us tonight.

Er durfte gestern Abend mit uns ins Kino gehen.  
He was allowed to go to the movies with us last night.

See nicht dürfen under müssen below.

b) können (to be able to)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ich kann</td>
<td>I am able to, can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du kannst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er kann</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir können</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr könnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie können</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past participle: gekonnt

Conditional/subjunctive: könnte (see 10.3.2.1)

When translating ‘could’ into German, ask yourself whether ‘could’ means ‘was/were able to’, in which case you are dealing with the imperfect and the word required is konnte, or whether it means ‘would be able to’, in which case you are dealing with the conditional and the word required is könnte (see 10.3.2.1), e.g.

**Der Arzt konnte seiner Patientin nicht helfen.**  
The doctor could not help his patient. (= was not able to)

**Der Arzt könnte seiner Patientin nicht helfen.**  
The doctor could not help his patient. (= would not be able to)

See mögen below for cases where können renders ‘may’.

c) mögen (to like)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ich mag</td>
<td>I like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du magst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er mag</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir mögen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr mögen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie mögen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
past participle: gemocht
conditional/subjunctive: möchte (see 10.3.2.1)

This verb can be used simply as a transitive verb, where it is usually used to refer to liking people but can be used for food too, e.g.

Ich mag dich (sehr gern).
I like you (a great deal).

Ich habe ihn/Ananas immer gemocht.
I have always liked him/pineapple.

Mögen occurs occasionally in set idioms where it renders ‘may’ expressing possibility, as opposed to dürfen which renders ‘may’ in the sense of permission, e.g.

Das mag wohl sein.
That may be so./That may well be.

Otherwise ‘may’, expressing possibility, is normally rendered by können, e.g.

Es kann mein Bruder gewesen sein, den Sie auf dem Markt gesehen haben.
It may have been my brother you saw at the market.

Das kann sein.
That may be.

d) müssen (to have to)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present</th>
<th>imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ich muss</td>
<td>I have to, must</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du musst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er muss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir müssen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihr müsst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sie müssen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

past participle: gemusst
conditional/subjunctive: müsste (see 10.3.2.1)

This verb in English has the peculiarity that the past tense of ‘must’ is ‘had to’, e.g.
Die Kinder müssen draußen spielen.
The children have to/must play outside.

Die Kinder mussten draußen spielen.
The children had to play outside.

There are complications with this verb when it is used in the negative, both in English and in German. Look at the following English sentences:

You have to/must read this book > You mustn’t read this book.
You don’t have to read this book.

Although ‘must’ and ‘have to’ are synonymous, i.e. Du musst dieses Buch lesen, ‘must not’ and ‘don’t have to’ are not. ‘Must not’ is a prohibition and is expressed by nicht dürfen, whereas ‘don’t have to’ implies a lack of obligation and is synonymous with ‘don’t need to’ and is thus expressed by nicht brauchen, e.g.

Du darfst dieses Buch nicht lesen.
You mustn’t read this book.

Du brauchst dieses Buch nicht (zu) lesen.
You don’t have/need to read this book. (= You needn’t read this book.)

It is true, however, that müssen is used with nicht in spoken German but, despite appearances, it means ‘don’t have/need to’ not ‘mustn’t’, e.g.

Du musst dieses Buch nicht lesen. = Du brauchst dieses Buch nicht (zu) lesen.
You don’t have to/don’t need to read this book.

Use of zu with brauchen, which is not a true modal verb, is optional although purists would maintain it is required (see double infinitives under 10.2.1).

e) sollen (ought to)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>present</th>
<th>imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ich soll</td>
<td>I ought to, shall</td>
<td>ich sollte I should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du sollst</td>
<td></td>
<td>du solltest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er soll</td>
<td></td>
<td>er sollte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wir sollen</td>
<td></td>
<td>wir sollten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.2.1 Double infinitive constructions

Look at the following English sentence which contains a modal verb in the perfect tense:

He hasn’t been able to earn much this year.

There are three verbs in this sentence: the finite verb ‘has’, the past participle ‘been able’ and the infinitive ‘to earn’. Literally in German this would be

*Er hat dieses Jahr nicht viel verdienen gekonnt.*

But this construction is not possible in German because of the double infinitive rule which states that the past participle of a modal verb cannot be used when the infinitive for which it is acting as an auxiliary is present, but it is used when that infinitive is not present, but implied, e.g.

*Er hat dieses Jahr nicht viel verdienen können.*

A: Hat er viel verdienen können? B: Nein, er hat es nicht gekonnt.

A: Has he been able to earn much? B: No, he hasn’t been able to.
When the infinitive is omitted and the past participle of a modal is used in German, it is always used in combination with the object *es*.

When two (or more) infinitives stand at the end of a German clause, they are in the reverse order to English.

*Nicht brauchen* is one way of rendering the negative of *müssen* (see *müssen* under 10.2 above). *Brauchen* is a verb that cannot make up its mind whether it is a modal or not; originally it was not, but it is being regarded more and more as one. If you treat it as a non-modal verb, you always use *zu* with it and in the perfect tense it behaves as follows:

**Du hast den Brief nicht zu schreiben gebraucht.**
You didn’t have/need to write the letter.

If you treat it as a modal, which is more usually the case in spoken German, you use a double infinitive construction in the perfect tense, e.g.

**Du hast den Brief nicht (zu) schreiben brauchen.**

When the perfect tense of a modal complete with dependent infinitive occurs in a subordinate clause, the finite verb precedes the two infinitives, i.e.

**Hast du gewusst, dass er dieses Jahr nicht viel hat verdienen können?**
Did you know that he hasn’t been able to earn much this year?

Modals are used most commonly in the imperfect tense (rather than in the perfect tense with a double infinitive construction), even where all other verbs are used in the perfect in speech (see 10.1.4.3).

See 10.3.2.5 for more modals in double infinitive constructions expressing ‘could/should have done’.

### 10.2.1.1 Double infinitives of non-modal verbs

This double infinitive construction is also used with a few other verbs that are not modal verbs, but which behave like modals in contexts where they have an infinitive dependent on them. This construction usually alternates with one utilizing the past participle of the verb concerned, e.g.

*fühlen* (to feel)  
**Er hat sein Herz klopfen fühlen.** or (less commonly)
Er hat sein Herz klopfen gefühlt.
He felt his heart beat(ing).

**helfen** (to help)

Du hast mir geholfen, Vokabeln zu lernen.
You helped me (to) learn vocabulary.

Du hast mir Vokabeln lernen helfen.
(most usual)

Du hast mir Vokabeln lernen geholfen.
(but least common)

You helped me (to) learn vocabulary.

**hören** (to hear)

Die Mutter hat ihr Baby weinen hören.
The mother heard her baby cry(ing).

Die Mutter hat ihr Baby weinen gehört.
(colloquially)

**sehen** (to see)

Ich habe Alexa tanzen sehen.
I saw Alexa dance/dancing.

Ich habe Alexa tanzen gesehen.
(colloquially)

Lassen, which translates both ‘to let (s.o. do s.t.)’ and ‘to have (s.o. do s.t.)’, is a very common auxiliary verb that always employs a double infinitive construction in the perfect, e.g.

**Ich habe meine Kinder alleine ins Kino gehen lassen.**
I let my children go to the movies alone.

**Ich habe mir die Haare schneiden lassen.**
I (have) had my hair cut.

**Wir haben ein Ferienhaus in diesem österreichischen Dorf bauen lassen.**
We (have) had a holiday home built in this Austrian village.

There are a few pairs of infinitives which render one concept in English that do **not** employ a double infinitive construction in the perfect tense where you might otherwise expect this to be the case (see 10.9.1.1), e.g.

**kennen lernen**

Ich lernte ihn in Berlin kennen.
I met him in Berlin.

Ich habe ihn in Berlin kennen gelernt.
(perfect)

**spazieren gehen**

Ich gehe jeden Tag spazieren.
I go for a walk/stroll every day.

(spazieren gehen)

Ich gehe jeden Tag spazieren.
(present)
10.2.2 Modals used with perfective infinitives

A perfective infinitive (see 10.1.7) is a verbal construction consisting of the auxiliary ‘to have’ used in combination with a past participle, e.g. ‘to have read’, which in German is gelesen haben, whereas ‘to have gone’ is gegangen sein as this is a verb of motion requiring sein as its auxiliary. This construction is commonly used in combination with modal verbs, e.g.

Die Feuerwehr muss zu spät gekommen sein.
The fire brigade must have arrived too late.

Er mag den Schlüssel verloren haben.
He may have lost the key.

Wer kann den Brief geschrieben haben?
Who can have written the letter?

Wer soll den Brief geschrieben haben?
Who is supposed/meant to have written the letter?

10.3 The subjunctive

The subjunctive is referred to as a mood, contrasting with the indicative mood, i.e. all the tenses we have looked at so far are officially called the
present indicative, the imperfect indicative etc., to give those tenses their full name. In addition to these there are present and past subjunctive forms, called Konjunktiv I and II respectively in German. For this reason we will call them subjunctive I and II here.

10.3.1 The subjunctive I

There are remnants of the present subjunctive in English, e.g. ‘The powers that be’, ‘The new law advocates that one keep to the left’ (not ‘keeps’). Where it is still used, most native speakers of English are unaware of its continued existence as its forms seldom differ from those of the present indicative (see ‘keep’ above). But where it is still used in English, it is not used in German, with one exception where it connotes ‘let something be the case’, i.e.

Lang lebe der König!
Long live the king. (The lack of ‘-s’ on ‘live’ tells you this is a subjunctive form.)

Gott segne dich!
God bless you.

Gott sei dank!
Thank God. (lit. Thanks be to God)

The forms of the subjunctive I are as follows for every verb in the language, both regular and irregular, except sein, which has a separate conjugation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>leben</td>
<td>ich lebe</td>
<td>du lebest</td>
<td>er/sie/es lebe</td>
<td>wir leben</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tragen</td>
<td>ich trage</td>
<td>du tragest</td>
<td>er/sie/es trage</td>
<td>wir tragen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geben</td>
<td>ich gebe</td>
<td>du gebest</td>
<td>er/sie/es gebe</td>
<td>wir geben</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sein</td>
<td>ich sei</td>
<td>du seiest</td>
<td>er/sie/es sei</td>
<td>wir seien</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

By far the most common use of subjunctive I relates to reporting indirect speech. Compare the following two sentences, where the former quotes directly what was said and the latter expresses it indirectly:

Sie hat ihn gefragt: „Warum kommst du nicht auch mit?“
She asked him, ‘Why don’t you come along too?’
Sie hat ihn gefragt, warum er nicht auch mitkomme.
She asked him why he isn’t coming along too.

When the verb in the subordinate clause is in the past, this is always expressed in German by the past participle plus the subjunctive I of haben or sein, depending on the auxiliary required for the verb concerned, e.g.

Sie hat ihn gefragt: „Warum hast du mir nicht geholfen?“
She asked him, ‘Why didn’t you help me?’

Sie hat ihn gefragt, warum er ihr nicht geholfen habe.
She asked him why he didn’t help her/hadn’t helped her.

Sie hat ihn gefragt, warum er nicht mitgegangen sei.
She asked him why he didn’t go along too/hadn’t gone along too.

Subjunctive I belongs to the realm of higher style and is found very commonly in journalese, but it is virtually always interchangeable with the present indicative. In fact because three of the six persons of the verb are identical to the present indicative, subjunctive II forms (see 10.3.2) are frequently used instead of subjunctive I forms, for all six persons, when reporting indirect speech. The following are all alternative versions of the previously mentioned examples:

Sie hat ihn gefragt, warum er nicht mitkommt. (present indicative)
Sie hat ihn gefragt, warum er nicht mitkäme. (subjunctive II)
Sie hat ihn gefragt, warum er ihr nicht geholfen hat. (present indicative)
Sie hat ihn gefragt, warum er ihr nicht geholfen hätte. (subjunctive II)

Sie hat ihn gefragt, warum er nicht mitgegangen ist. (present indicative)
Sie hat ihn gefragt, warum er nicht mitgegangen wäre. (subjunctive II)

10.3.1.1 Omission of dass

It is not uncommon when reporting indirect speech in a subordinate clause that would otherwise be introduced by dass, to omit the conjunction, but then it is necessary to use either form of the subjunctive, not the indicative, and the finite verb in the subjunctive is left in second place, not sent to the end of the clause, e.g.
Er hat gesagt, dass er zwei Wochen in Russland gewesen ist/sei/wäre.
Er hat gesagt, er sei/wäre zwei Wochen in Russland gewesen.
He said he was/had been in Russia for two weeks.

10.3.2 The subjunctive II

You will use subjunctive II much more often than subjunctive I, as it is indispensable. The past subjunctive is complicated, but what you need to know actively is much less than you need to know passively – most forms you can recognize and understand but will rarely need to use yourself.

10.3.2.1 The subjunctive II of strong verbs

There is only one living example of subjunctive II in English (called the past subjunctive in English), which is a good place to start as it corresponds exactly with German, i.e. ‘If I were healthy, I would go along too.’ ‘If I were healthy’ states a hypothesis, as opposed to ‘I was healthy’, which states a fact. German makes the same distinction, e.g. Wenn ich gesund wäre, würde ich auch mitgehen versus Ich war gesund. But German always makes this distinction between the past subjunctive (i.e. subjunctive II) and the past indicative (i.e. the imperfect), whereas in English it is only obvious with certain persons of the verb ‘to be’ where ‘was’ and ‘were’ alternate, not with any other verb, e.g.

Wenn ich ein Auto hätte, würde ich dich nach Hause bringen.
If I had a car I would take you home.

Here German can continue to show the difference between the fact (Ich hatte ein Auto) and the hypothesis (Wenn ich ein Auto hätte), whereas English does not bother to. Wäre and hätte already give you some idea of what you do to form the subjunctive II of strong verbs – here is the full conjugation of those two verbs plus two others to illustrate the regularity:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Subjunctive II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sein</td>
<td>wäre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haben</td>
<td>hätte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kommen</td>
<td>käme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gehen</td>
<td>ginge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du</td>
<td>wäre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hättest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kämest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gingest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Although you can apply this pattern to almost any strong verb (e.g. *finden* > *fände*, *fliegen* > *flöge*), in practice you will find the subjunctive II forms of only a handful of very common verbs being used: *wäre* and *hätte* are of course indispensable, *käme* is not uncommon but *ginge* is less frequently used. Generally speaking, in addition to *wäre* and *hätte*, you will only need actively to use the subjunctive II of modal verbs as well as that of *werden* and *wissen*, i.e. *dürfte*, *könnte*, *möchte*, *müsse*, *würde* and *wüsste*; *sollte* and *wollte* do not have separate subjunctive II forms. All of these verbs, with the exception of *wissen*, are commonly used as auxiliary verbs and *wissen* is only here because of the frequency of the expression *Wenn ich nur wüsste!* (If only I knew). Quite a number of strong verbs have irregular subjunctive II forms which are virtually never used any more, e.g. *sterben* > *stürbe* (imperfect *starb*), *helfen* > *hülfe* (imperfect *half*), *empfehlen* > *empföhle* (imperfect *empfahl*).

So how do you avoid using the subjunctive II of strong verbs? Take a sentence like ‘It would not surprise me if he died before his wife’. Whenever an if-clause is used in combination with a would-clause, the verb in the if-clause requires a subjunctive II form, thus you would expect here: *Es würde mich nicht erstaunen, wenn er vor seiner Frau stürbe*. Although this is correct German, it sounds very stilted and would seldom be heard (but possibly written); forms like *stürbe* are consistently replaced by *sterben würde* in natural sounding German, i.e. … *wenn er vor seiner Frau sterben würde* (compare the English ‘… if he were to die before his wife’). With some of the more common verbs, like *kommen* and *gehen* above, you might hear either *käme/ginge* or *kommen würde/gehen würde*, but with less common verbs only the latter will be regularly heard, e.g. not *fände* but *finden würde*, not *flöge* but *fliegen würde*, e.g.

Wenn du über Wien fliegen würdest, würdest du schneller in Athen ankommen.
If you flew via Vienna, you would get to Athens sooner.

Wherever you can use the subjunctive II of *sein*, *haben*, *wissen* and the modals, do not avoid doing so by using the *würde*-construction, e.g.

Wenn ich dir helfen müsste …
If I had to help you …
Wenn er teilnehmen könnte …
If he could take part …

Wenn ich nur wüsste, wo er wohnt!
If only I knew where he’s living.

### 10.3.2.2 Alternative subjunctive II constructions found only in higher style

In higher style in English it is possible to omit the ‘if’ in an if-clause and to invert the subject and verb instead. This has a direct parallel in German and is regarded as equally high style, e.g.

**Wenn Krieg ausbräche, würden alle Ausländer das Land verlassen.**
If war broke out/were to break out, all foreigners would leave the country.

**Bräche Krieg aus, so würden …**
Were war to break out, …

It is usual to start the would-clause with so when this inversion is applied in the if-clause.

There are three additional ways in which the above could be expressed, the first being the most everyday way and the last two sounding as formal as their English equivalents, i.e.

**Wenn Krieg ausbrechen würde, …**
If war broke out, …

**Wenn Krieg ausbrechen sollte, …**
If war should break out, …

**Sollte Krieg ausbrechen, so …**
Should war break out, …

### 10.3.2.3 The subjunctive II of regular verbs

In English, with the exception of ‘was/were’, no attempt is made to distinguish between the past indicative (i.e. the imperfect) and the past subjunctive, usually called subjunctive II in German (see 10.3.2.1), i.e. between fact and hypothesis. Although it is vital to make the distinction in German with strong verbs, the same necessity does not exist with regular verbs, with the result that they can behave exactly as all verbs do in English, e.g.
Wenn du es machtest, würde ich dich dafür bezahlen.
If you did it, I would pay you for it.

Although this is possible, generally speaking German likes to emphasize the hypothetical nature of the action in the if-clause and does so in this case by using the würde-construction dealt with under 10.3.2.1 – the addition of an Umlaut is not possible with regular verbs, i.e.

Wenn du es machen würdest, würde ich dich dafür bezahlen.

10.3.2.4 Use of the subjunctive II in would-clauses

Use of the subjunctive II forms described in 10.3.2.1 is not limited to if-clauses, as illustrated there; they are also commonly used in would-clauses, e.g.

Wenn er reicher wäre, hätte er ein besseres Auto. (= würde er ein besseres Auto haben)
If he were richer, he would have a better car.

Although would-clauses can be rendered by würde-clauses, with the verbs whose subjunctive II is commonly used in if-clauses, it is more usual to use those subjunctive II forms in the would-clauses too, e.g.

Wenn es nicht so kalt wäre, wäre es schon angenehmer. (= würde es schon angenehmer sein)
If it weren’t so cold, it would indeed be more pleasant.

Wenn du mitkommen würdest, könntest du mir helfen. (= würdest du mir helfen können)
If you came along, you could help me.

Du könntest mitkommen (= du würdest mitkommen können), wenn du möchtest.
You could come along if you would like to.

10.3.2.5 ‘Could/should have done’

The most complex subjunctive constructions you will encounter are those German double infinitive constructions that render ‘could have done’ and ‘should have done’, where ‘done’ stands for any verb, i.e. ‘could have seen/made/gone’ etc., e.g.

Er hätte es machen können.
He could have done it
**Er hätte auch mitkommen können.**
He could have come along too.

**Sie hätte dir helfen sollen.**
She should have helped you.

The formula is the same in all cases, i.e. always use hätte, regardless of whether the infinitive that follows takes haben or sein in the perfect because in fact this is a perfect subjunctive form of the modal verbs, not of machen, mitkommen or helfen.

The construction with können allows itself to be logically dissected – see the second translation of the following German sentence which is synonymous with the first; it merely expresses ‘could’ in terms of ‘to be able’ and illustrates that würde and haben have been contracted, as is nearly always the case in German, to be expressed by hätte:

**Der Lehrer hätte die Schüler früher nach Hause schicken können.**
The teacher could have sent the pupils home earlier.
The teacher would have been able to send the pupils home earlier.

( would have = hätte, been able = können, to send = schicken)

The construction with sollen does not permit logical breakdown like this, so both constructions are simply best learnt parrot-fashion, i.e. ‘could have done’ is hätte machen können and ‘should have done’ is hätte machen sollen.

### 10.4 The passive

The passive is a so-called voice, not a tense. All tenses of the active extend to the passive too. A passive construction is one where the object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the finite verb:

**active:**  Die Polizei untersucht den Mord.
The police are investigating the murder.

**passive:**  Der Mord wird (von der Polizei) untersucht.
The murder is being investigated (by the police).

In the passive the agent or doer of the action may be left unmentioned (hence the brackets in the above example) if so desired. The passive is used in German more or less exactly as it is in English (see 10.4.6 for the few exceptions). You use the passive in preference to the active for
stylistic reasons, often because who has performed the action is either unknown or irrelevant to the information you wish to relay, e.g. ‘The money has been found’, where the agent is not mentioned and thus this is the passive equivalent of something like ‘Someone has found the money’. If in English you would say the former, do so in German too; and if the latter is the appropriate construction in English, so it is in German too, i.e.

Das Geld ist gefunden worden.
Jemand hat das Geld gefunden.

As the passive is a construction in which the object of the active becomes the subject of the passive, generally speaking only transitive verbs – those that can take an object (see 10.11) – can be used in the passive. Thus verbs like gehen, kommen and sterben cannot be used in the passive in either English or German.

10.4.1 How to construct the passive

The passive is constructed in English by a tense form of the verb ‘to be’ plus a past participle plus an optional agent introduced by the preposition ‘by’:

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{subject} & \text{to be} & \text{past participle} & (\text{by } + \text{noun/pronoun})
\end{array}
\]

The murder is being investigated (by the police/them).

The German passive differs in that the verb werden is used, not sein, to translate the verb ‘to be’ and ‘by’ is rendered by von:

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{subject} & \text{werden} & (\text{von } + \text{noun/pronoun}) & \text{past participle}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{Der Mord wird (von der Polizei) untersucht. (present tense)}
\end{array}
\]

The murder is being investigated (by the police).

\[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{Der Mord wurde (von der Polizei) untersucht. (imperfect tense)}
\end{array}
\]

The murder was [being] investigated (by the police).

\[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{Der Mord ist (von der Polizei) untersucht worden. (perfect tense)}
\end{array}
\]

The murder has been investigated (by the police).
The passive

Der Mord war (von der Polizei) untersucht worden. (pluperfect tense)
The murder had been investigated (by the police).

Der Mord wird (von der Polizei) untersucht werden. (future tense)
The murder will be investigated (by the police).

Der Mord wird (von der Polizei) untersucht worden sein. (future perfect tense)
The murder will have been investigated (by the police).

Der Mord würde (von der Polizei) untersucht werden. (conditional tense)
Der Mord würde (von der Polizei) untersucht. (würde = contracted würde + werden)
The murder would be investigated (by the police).

Der Mord wäre (von der Polizei) untersucht worden. (conditional perfect tense)
The murder would have been investigated (by the police). (see note below)

Remember the following with regard to how the tenses of the passive are used. Just as in the active (see 10.1.2), the present tense is commonly used in German to express the future as well, especially when an adverb of future time is mentioned, e.g.

Der Mord wird bald von der Polizei untersucht.
The murder will soon be investigated by the police.

And once again, just as in the active (see 10.1.4.3), the English imperfect is commonly expressed by the perfect in German, especially in speech, e.g.

Der Mord ist von der Polizei untersucht worden.
The murder was (being) investigated by the police.

The use of war in the example in the pluperfect tense above looks suspiciously like it is rendering ‘The murder was investigated …’, but this is precisely what this does not mean as war here translates ‘had’; both wurde untersucht and ist untersucht worden render ‘was investigated’.

The example in the conditional perfect tense above is a contraction of the following, but would nearly always be expressed in that contracted way:
10.4.2 The passive with a modal verb

Modal verbs often act as auxiliaries in the passive, as in English, and should simply be translated literally, and the infinitive ‘to be’ is of course rendered by werden, not sein:

Der Mord muss (von der Polizei) untersucht werden.
The murder must be investigated (by the police).

Der Mord musste (von der Polizei) untersucht werden.
The murder had to be investigated (by the police).

Der Mord hat (von der Polizei) untersucht werden müssen.
The murder has had to be investigated (by the police).

The following modal constructions differ considerably from English (see 10.3.2.5):

Das hätte gemacht werden können.
That could have been done.

Das hätte gemacht werden sollen.
That should have been done.

10.4.3 Action versus state with the passive

German grammars talk of ‘das Vorgangs- versus das Zustandspassiv’ which we’ll call the action versus the state, sometimes called the false passive. What is dealt with under 10.4 to 10.4.2 is the true passive (or Vorgangspassiv) where an action being performed by someone is described, even though that someone may not be mentioned. But take a sentence like ‘The table is laid.’ If you are describing an action, i.e. if the sentence is ‘The table is (being) laid (by her)’, then the present tense of werden must be used: Der Tisch wird (von ihr) gedeckt. Similarly, in the past ‘The table was laid’; if it means ‘The table was (being) laid (by her)’, it will be in German Der Tisch wurde (von ihr) gedeckt.
But perhaps only a state, not an action, is implied, i.e. ‘The table is/was laid.’ Here the past participle can be regarded simply as a normal adjective like ‘large’ in the sentence ‘The table is/was large’, where no agent is implied. If this is the case then the sentence is translated as Der Tisch ist/war gedeckt.

### 10.4.4 Passives with indirect objects

A special difficulty arises in passive sentences such as the following: ‘I/he was given a book (by them).’ If you look firstly at the active of this sentence ‘They gave a book to me/him’, you see that the English ‘I’ and ‘he’ are indirect objects in meaning: I/he was not given, but a book was given to me/him; thus this ‘I’ and ‘he’ are translated by mir and ihm in German, e.g.

Mir/ihm wurde ein Buch gegeben.
I/he was given a book.

This must also be observed when a verb that takes a dative object is used in the passive in German:

Ihm konnte nicht geholfen werden.
He could not be helped.

This is the passive of the active sentence:

Niemand konnte ihm helfen.
Nobody could help him.

### 10.4.5 Passives with a dummy subject es

A dummy subject es is commonly used in combination with the passive in German, especially when the agent is not mentioned.

Es sind viele Computer installiert worden.
Many computers have been installed.
There have been a lot of computers installed.

Es muss etwas getan werden.
Something must be done.

As these two English examples illustrate, the equivalent construction in English uses ‘there’, but this is often not possible in English where an
es construction is possible in German. There are more examples of this concept under 10.4.6.

### 10.4.6 Passive use of intransitive verbs

No intransitive verb in English can be used in the passive because the passive is by definition a construction in which the object of the active becomes the subject of the passive and a verb that has no object therefore cannot occur in the passive. Broadly speaking the same applies in German too with the following exception. Intransitive verbs that are not verbs of motion or change of state can be used in the passive in impersonal constructions, and are especially found where the sentence is introduced by a dummy subject *es* or an adverb of place (note that none of the following English translations contain a passive), e.g.

**Es wird zu viel geredet.**
There is too much talking going on.

**Hier wird weder getanzt noch gelacht.**
There is neither dancing nor laughter here.

**In dieser Kirche wird nicht gesungen.** (a trans. verb being used intransitively)
There’s no singing in this church./People don’t sing in this church.

These *es*-constructions are very common in German. If such sentences begin with an adverbial expression, *es* is dropped, e.g.

**Hier wird nicht geraucht.** (= *Es wird hier nicht geraucht.*)
People don’t smoke here.

**Auch am Wochenende wird gearbeitet.** (= *Es wird auch am Wochenende gearbeitet.*)
Work is also done on weekends.

### 10.4.7 Alternatives to the passive

a) The passive is frequently avoided in German by using alternative constructions, the most common of which is **man** (‘one’, see 7.1.1.2 and 7.7.2). This is sometimes possible in English too, where it usually sounds stilted, which is certainly not the case in German, e.g.
Hier wird Deutsch gesprochen. (passive)
Hier spricht man Deutsch.
German is spoken here.

In dieser Fabrik werden Staubsauger hergestellt. (passive)
In dieser Fabrik stellt man Staubsauger her.
Vacuum cleaners are manufactured in this factory.

b) Sich lassen is used in combination with an infinitive to express what
might otherwise be expressed by a passive with können or man +
können, e.g.

Das lässt sich bestimmt reparieren.
Das kann bestimmt repariert werden.
Das kann man bestimmt reparieren.
That can certainly be repaired.

c) And finally a construction consisting of sein + zu + infinitive is yet
another stylistic alternative to the passive that you will encounter, e.g.

Es war niemand zu sehen.
There was nobody to be seen.

So was ist in Deutschland nicht zu finden.
Something like that is not to be found in Germany.

10.4.8 Passive alternatives to the use of participles in extended
adjectival phrases

See 7.6.4 for the use of participles in extended adjectival phrases in lieu of
relative clauses containing a passive.

10.5 The infinitive

10.5.1 Characteristics of the infinitive

The infinitive or basic undeclined form of the verb nearly always ends
in -en in German: laufen ‘to run’, sehen ‘to see’ etc. There are only two
monosyllabic verbs whose infinitives end in -n, i.e. tun (to do) and sein (to
be) (see 10.1.1.1).
English always puts ‘to’ before the infinitive in isolation; one should learn each new verb as follows: laufen = to run. In context, however, there are occasions when this ‘to’ may or may not be used. Similarly in German, although the infinitive in isolation is never preceded by zu; in a sentence there are rules for when zu is and is not used before an infinitive.

10.5.2 Rules for the use of zu with infinitives

As a general rule one can say that an infinitive at the end of a clause is always preceded by zu, e.g.

_Dieser Ausdruck ist nicht leicht zu übersetzen._
This expression is not easy to translate.

_Er versucht dir zu helfen._
He’s trying to help you.

_Wir hoffen in den Sommerferien nach Norwegen fahren zu können._
We’re hoping to be able to go to Norway in the summer holidays.

But in the following extremely numerous cases zu before the infinitive is omitted:

a) When the infinitive is used as a general impersonal imperative (see 10.1.3), e.g.

_Nicht rauchen!_  
Don’t smoke.

_Nicht so viel Krach machen!_  
Don’t make so much noise.

_Nicht so schnell fahren!_  
Don’t drive so fast.

b) It is never used after modal verbs, i.e. when a modal is the finite verb in the clause (see 10.2); German shares this feature with English:

_Er kann es nicht machen._  
He can’t do it./He isn’t able to do it.

_Wir müssen drei Romane auf Französisch lesen._  
We must (= have to) read three novels in French.
Wir haben drei Romane auf Französisch lesen müssen.
We had to read thee novels in French.

Note the English modal ‘to want to’, where the second ‘to’ is part of the verb (compare ‘to be able to’ and ‘to have to’ above), unlike German.

Er will auch mitgehen.
He wants to go along too.

Er muss auch mitgehen.
He has to go along too.

10.5.3 Use of um … zu before infinitives

a) When ‘to’ before an infinitive means ‘in order to’, you need to use um … zu, which construction is called an infinitive clause. Compare the archaic English form ‘She went to town for to buy a bonnet’, which comes close to the literal meaning and feeling of German um … zu:

Ich gehe in die Stadt, um einen Schirm zu kaufen.
I am going to town to buy an umbrella.

Es ist nicht notwendig, die Straße zu überqueren, um zur Post zu kommen.
It is not necessary to cross the road to get to the post office.

The first ‘to’ in the previous example does not mean ‘in order to’, whereas the second ‘to’ does and thus zu and um … zu alternate here.

b) When a sentence begins with an infinitive clause, where ‘to’ also means ‘in order to’, um … zu is required, e.g.

Um eine Fremdsprache gut zu lernen, muss man das Land besuchen.
To learn a foreign language well, you must visit the country. (= in order to)

c) There is one specific use of um … zu which renders English ‘only to …’, e.g.

Er überlebte die Operation, um kurz danach an einem Herzinfarkt zu sterben.
He survived the operation only to die of a heart attack soon thereafter.
Despite appearances, common sense prevents this being interpreted as ‘He survived the operation in order to die of a heart attack soon thereafter.’

10.5.3.1 Other infinitive clauses (see 11.3)

10.5.4 Double infinitive constructions (see 10.2.1)

10.5.5 The infinitive used as a noun

The infinitive of any verb can be used as a noun in the same way that the gerund (i.e. the ‘-ing’ form of a verb) can be in English. Such nouns are always neuter (see 6.1.3.b), e.g.

*bellen* (to bark), thus *das Bellen* (the barking)
*kochen* (to cook), thus *das Kochen* (cooking)

Ich bin gegen (das) Rauchen.
I am against smoking.

Das Lernen von neuen Vokabeln macht Spaß.
Learning new vocabulary is fun.

Vermeide das Trinken von Wodka, wenn du in Russland bist.
Avoid drinking vodka when you’re in Russia.

10.6 Participles

10.6.1 Present participles

The present participle in German is formed by adding -d to the infinitive, e.g. *laufend* (walking), *klingelnd* (ringing). The present participle is not as commonly used in German, as most English ‘-ing’ constructions are expressed in other ways. It is used in the following instances:

a) Many attributive adjectives are formed from the present participle, in which case the usual adjectival endings are added to the form in -d wherever the adjective needs to be inflected:

*eine lachende Frau* a laughing woman
b) It is commonly used as an adverb of manner, in which case it often has a direct parallel in English:

**Das Kind kam weinend zurück.**
The child returned crying.

**Er reagierte wütend.**
He reacted angrily. (lit. seethingly)

c) It can also be used to form adjectival nouns, e.g.

**die Überlebenden**  the survivors

**alle Wartenden**  all those waiting

### 10.6.2 Past participles

In addition to its verbal functions in forming the perfect tenses of verbs (see 10.1.5.1), the past participle of a verb can be used as an adjective, in much the same way as it is in English, e.g.

**eine gehasste Frau**  a hated woman

**ein mit der Hand geschriebener Brief**  a handwritten letter

**der übersetzte Film**  the translated film

**Der Tisch ist gedeckt.**  The table is laid. (see passive, 10.4.3)

**der gedeckte Tisch**  the laid table

### 10.6.3 Use of present and past participles in extended adjectival phrases (see relative pronouns, 7.6.4)
Progressive tenses

The subtle distinction made in English between ‘I am reading a German novel at the moment’ (occurring now) and ‘I read one German novel a year at most’ (a repetitive action) is not usually made in German, e.g.

_Ich lese im Augenblick einen deutschen Roman._
_Ich lese höchstens einen deutschen Roman pro Jahr._

The same applies to such progressive tenses in the past, e.g.

_Ich habe den neuesten Roman von Grass gelesen._
_I have been reading Grass’s latest novel._
_I have read Grass’s latest novel._

What is being expressed by progressive forms of the tenses in English can also be expressed in German, if need be; however, it is not done verbally but rather by means of adverbs or other constructions, e.g.

_Sie duscht sich gerade._
_She is having a shower. (lit. She is just showering.)_

_Ich komme schon._
_I’m coming._

The construction _gerade dabei sein, etwas zu tun_ is very commonly used where there is a need to emphasize that an action is ongoing, e.g.

_Er war gerade dabei, das Auto aus dem Schlamm zu ziehen, als das Tau auf einmal riss._
_He was (in the process of) pulling the car out of the mud when the rope suddenly snapped._

_Beim_ + an infinitival noun (see 10.5.5) is another common option, context and syntax permitting, e.g.

_Wir waren beim Essen, als das Telefon klingelte._
_We were eating when the phone rang._

_A: Was machst du? B: Ich bin beim Kochen./Ich koche._
_A: What are you doing? B: I’m cooking._
10.8 Reflexive verbs

Reflexive verbs are dealt with under reflexive pronouns (see 7.3).

10.9 Verbal prefixes

German has a very elaborate system of verbal prefixes. These prefixes can be separable or inseparable, this distinction being explained below. There are subtle distinctions between antworten and beantworten (to answer), and folgen, befolgen, erfolgen and verfolgen (to follow), for example. Many prefixes, when applied to a root verb, produce an entirely new verb that has semantically little or nothing to do with the original verb (e.g. suchen ‘to seek’ and besuchen ‘to visit’), whereas the semantic connection between others is more obvious (e.g. fahren ‘to travel’ and abfahren ‘to depart’).

10.9.1 Verbs with separable prefixes (separable verbs)

Many German verbs take a prefix which separates from the verb in certain circumstances. Let’s take a look at a typical separable verb, aufmachen (to open):

- **present tense:** Er macht die Tür auf.
  He opens the door.

- **imperfect tense:** Er machte die Tür auf.
  He opened the door.

- **imperative:** Mach die Tür bitte auf!
  Please open the door.

- **perfect tense:** Er hat die Tür aufgemacht.
  He has opened the door.

- **in an infinitive clause:** Er hat versucht, die Tür aufzumachen.
  He tried to open the door.

- **in a subordinate clause:** Als er die Tür aufmacht, sah er sie.
  When he opened the door, he saw her.

Verbs like this with a separable prefix always stress the prefix, which is how you can tell that a verb with such a prefix is a so-called separable verb. In addition a large number of prefixes are always stressed, but not all.
Verbs with these prefixes are called separable verbs because, as illustrated above,

1. in the present and imperfect tenses, as well as in the imperative, the prefix stands separate from the verb at the end of the clause. However, in a subordinate clause the prefix and the verb, by both having to stand at the end of the clause, recognize each other and join up again as in the infinitive.

2. in the past participle ge- is inserted between the prefix and the root of the verb

3. in infinitive clauses (see 11.3) zu is inserted between the prefix and the root of the verb.

These prefixes are applied to both regular and irregular verbs.

The prefixes that separate are of two kinds:

a) The most common prefixes are prepositions.

These are always separable:

- ab-, an-, auf-, aus-, bei-, mit-, nach-, vor-, zu-

Examples: abfahren (to depart), ankommen (to arrive), aufgeben (to rise [of sun]), avenge (to go out), beitragen (to contribute), mitgehen (to go along), nachschicken (to forward [mail]), vorsehen (to introduce), zugeben (to admit)

For hin and her in combination with such prepositional verbal prefixes, see 9.7.3.

b) Quite a number of somewhat less common prefixes are adverbs (this list is not complete), e.g.

- dar-, fort-, her-, hin-, los-, nieder-, statt-, teil-, voran-, voraus-, vorbei-, vorüber-, weg-, zurück-, zusammen-

Examples: vorbeifahren (to drive past), weggehen (to go away), zurückkommen (to come back). The literal meaning of these adverbs is usually evident in the new compound verb. Some occur in only a couple of verbs, e.g. statt- and teil-.

There is a small group of very common verbs consisting of two infinitives that together form a new concept, e.g. kennen lernen (to meet [for the first
time]), sitzen bleiben (to stay down [at school]), spazieren gehen (to go for a walk) and stehen bleiben (to stop/stand still). Under the old spelling these were written as one word and thus the first verb in each couplet acted as a de facto separable prefix. They are now written as two words but otherwise nothing has changed, e.g.

Ich habe ihn in Wien kennen gelernt.
I (first) met him in Vienna.

Ich habe keine Zeit spazieren zu gehen.
I have no time to go for a walk.

Compare double infinitive constructions like fallen lassen, which differ markedly (see 10.2.1.1).

10.9.2 Verbs with inseparable prefixes (inseparable verbs)

Many German verbs take a prefix which is never stressed and never separates from the verb. The most common inseparable prefixes are the following, which are to be compared with prefixes such as those in ‘to believe’, ‘to discover’, ‘to release’ and ‘to forget’, which are not stressed in English either:

be-, emp-, ent-, er-, ge-, miss-, ver-, zer-

Examples: beschreiben (to describe), empfehlen (to recommend), entwickeln (to develop), erzählen (to relate, tell), geschehen (to happen), misslingen (to fail), vergessen (to forget), zerbrechen (to smash)

Let’s take a look at a typical inseparable verb, besuchen (to visit):

present tense: Er besucht seine Großeltern.
He is visiting his grandparents.

imperfect tense: Er besuchte seine Großeltern.
He visited his grandparents.

imperative: Besuch deine Großeltern!
Visit your grandparents.

perfect tense: Er hat seine Großeltern besucht.
He has visited his grandparents.

in an infinitive clause: Er hat versucht, seine Großeltern zu besuchen.
He tried to visit his grandparents.
in a subordinate clause: **Als er seine Großeltern besuchte, waren sie krank.**
When he visited his grandparents, they were sick.

### 10.9.3 Verbs with variable prefixes (separable or inseparable verbs)

There is a small group of chiefly prepositional prefixes that can be either separable or inseparable, e.g.

**durch-, hinter-, um-, über-, unter-, voll-, wider-, wieder-**

Examples of separable verbs: **durchgehen** (to go through), **umbringen** (to kill), **volltanken** (to fill up [car with fuel]), **wiedersehen** (to see again)

Examples of inseparable verbs: **durchsuchen** (to search), **überholen** (to overtake), **umgeben** (to surround), **unterschreiben** (to sign), **wiederholen** (to repeat)

When faced with a new verb with one of these prefixes that you have never seen before, you will not automatically know if it is separable or not, e.g. **umsteigen** (to change [trains, buses etc.]) or **umarmen** (to embrace). A good dictionary should have some means of indicating which category a given verb belongs to, e.g. 'umsteigen, um'armen where the marker stands in front of the stressed syllable. Once you know a prefix is stressed, you also know it is separable and thus the past participles of these two verbs are **umgestiegen** and **umarmt** respectively and when used together with zu act as follows: **umzusteigen**, **zu umarmen**.

Very occasionally the same verb is found with both a separable and an inseparable prefix but with totally different meanings; separable verbs tend to be more literal and inseparable more figurative in meaning, e.g. 'umgehen (to associate with), **um'gehen** (to get round, evade), 'überfahren (to pass over), **über'fahren** (to run over), 'unterhalten (to hold under), **unter'halten** (to entertain, maintain).

Let’s take a look at a typical inseparable verb that has one of these prefixes, **widersprechen** (to contradict + dat.); compare these forms with **aufmachen** in 10.9.1.

**present tense:**

**Er widerspricht seiner Mutter.**
He contradicts his mother.

**imperfect tense:**

**Er widersprach seiner Mutter.**
He contradicted his mother.
10.10 **Verbs followed by prepositional objects**

Both English and German have verbs that are connected to their objects by means of a preposition, but the problem here lies in the fact that the preposition required is often different in German from that used in English, e.g.

**Er hat mich um Geld gebeten.**
He asked me for money. (*um* translates ‘for’ here, not *für*)

For this reason it is best to learn such verbs not, for example, as *bitten* = to ask, but as *bitten um* + acc. = to ask for.

The verbs below are grouped under the German prepositions they are followed by in order to give the learner a feeling for the use of prepositions in German. This approach thereby fulfils a function the dictionary does not. The following list does not attempt to be complete, but merely to give an indication of the concept. This is the sort of additional information about verbs that you need to be on the lookout for when consulting a good bilingual dictionary.

There are also verbs that require a prepositional object in English, but govern the dative in German instead of employing a preposition, e.g.

**geben** + dat. (to give to)
**Er hat seinem Sohn sein altes Auto gegeben.**
He gave his son his old car.

**sich unterwerfen** + dat. (to subject to)
**Alle Einwohner haben sich dem neuen Regime unterwerfen müssen.**
All inhabitants had to subject themselves to the new regime.
There are verbs that do not take a prepositional object in English, but do in German, e.g.

*zweifeln an* + dat. (to doubt)
Ich zweifle an der Wahrheit von dem, was er sagt.
I doubt the truth of what he says.

Sometimes what is expressed by a verb followed by a prepositional object in English is expressed by a transitive verb with a separable prefix in German, e.g.

*anbellen* (to bark at)
Der Hund hat die Kinder angebellt.
The dog barked at the children.

*auslachen* (to laugh at, ridicule)
Seine Kollegen haben ihn ausgelacht.
His colleagues laughed at him.

**an + acc.**

binden to tie to
denken to think of
erinnern to remind s.o. of s.t.
sich erinnern to remember s.o. or s.t.
glauben to believe in (God)
grenzen to border on
schicken to send to
sich gewöhnen to get used/accustomed to
sich wenden to turn to (s.o. for help)

**an + dat.**

arbeiten to work at
erkennen to recognize by
sich freuen to take pleasure in/rejoice at
hindern to prevent from
leiden to suffer from (a disease)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sterben</td>
<td>to die of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teilnehmen</td>
<td>to take part in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vorbeigehen</td>
<td>to pass (by)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zweifeln</td>
<td>to doubt s.t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>auf</strong> + acc.</td>
<td>(many verbs take <strong>auf</strong> + acc.; very few take <strong>auf</strong> + dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antworten</td>
<td>to answer to (a question)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aufmerksam machen</td>
<td>to call (s.o.'s) attention to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aufpassen</td>
<td>to keep an eye on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich beziehen</td>
<td>to refer to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich freuen</td>
<td>to look forward to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gucken</td>
<td>to look at (a watch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoffen</td>
<td>to hope for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kommen</td>
<td>to hit upon/think of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich konzentrieren</td>
<td>to concentrate on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reagieren</td>
<td>to react to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rechnen</td>
<td>to count on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schätzen</td>
<td>to assess/value at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schauen</td>
<td>to look at (a watch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schießen</td>
<td>to shoot at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich spezialisieren</td>
<td>to specialize in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trinken</td>
<td>to drink to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich verlassen</td>
<td>to rely, depend on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verzichten</td>
<td>to do without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warten</td>
<td>to wait for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weisen</td>
<td>to point to/at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wetten</td>
<td>to bet on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zielen</td>
<td>to aim at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zukommen</td>
<td>to come up to (s.o.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zurückkommen</td>
<td>to return to (a topic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auf + dat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beruhen</td>
<td>to be founded/based on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bestehen</td>
<td>to insist on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aus + dat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ableiten</td>
<td>to infer/deduce from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bestehen</td>
<td>to consist of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datieren</td>
<td>to date from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entkommen</td>
<td>to escape from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entstehen</td>
<td>to arise/spring from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kommen</td>
<td>to come from (a country, town)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stammen</td>
<td>to hail from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trinken</td>
<td>to drink from (a glass, bottle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>übersetzen</td>
<td>to translate from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>werden</td>
<td>to become of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bei + dat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich entschuldigen</td>
<td>to apologize to s.o.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helfen</td>
<td>to help with (work)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nehmen</td>
<td>to take by (the hand)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wohnen</td>
<td>to live with (i.e. at s.o.’s place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>für + acc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich begeistern</td>
<td>to be enthusiastic about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danken</td>
<td>to thank for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich entscheiden</td>
<td>to decide on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelten</td>
<td>to apply/be applicable to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German Verb</td>
<td>English Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halten</td>
<td>to consider to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich interessieren</td>
<td>to be interested in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich schämen</td>
<td>to be ashamed of s.t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorgen</td>
<td>to take care of/look after</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verbs followed by prepositional objects**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Verb</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>einsteigen</td>
<td>to get into (i.e. a bus, train etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eintreten</td>
<td>to enter (into)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geraten</td>
<td>to get into (problems)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich mischen</td>
<td>to meddle in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>übersetzen</td>
<td>to translate into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich verlieben</td>
<td>to fall in love with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich vertiefen</td>
<td>to become engrossed in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sich) verwandeln</td>
<td>to change into</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verbs with dat.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Verb</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ankommen</td>
<td>to arrive in/at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich irren</td>
<td>to be mistaken in (your judgement) about s.o./s.t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich täuschen</td>
<td>to be wrong about s.t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verbs with mit + dat.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Verb</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sich abfinden</td>
<td>to be satisfied with, accept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich beschäftigen</td>
<td>to occupy/busy o.s. with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handeln</td>
<td>to trade/deal in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nicken</td>
<td>to nod (one's head)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rechnen</td>
<td>to count on s.t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reden</td>
<td>to speak/talk to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprechen</td>
<td>to speak to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich unterhalten</td>
<td>to converse with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German Verb</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vergleichen</td>
<td>to compare to/with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich verheiraten</td>
<td>to marry/get married to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>versehen</td>
<td>to provide with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**nach + dat.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Verb</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aussehen</td>
<td>to look like (rain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fischen</td>
<td>to fish for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragen</td>
<td>to ask after, enquire about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graben</td>
<td>to dig for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greifen</td>
<td>to clutch at/grab for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hungern</td>
<td>to hunger after/for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riechen</td>
<td>to smell of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rufen</td>
<td>to call for s.o.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schicken</td>
<td>to send for (a doctor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schmecken</td>
<td>to taste of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schreien</td>
<td>to yell/scream for s.o.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich sehnen</td>
<td>to long for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stinken</td>
<td>to stink/smell of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>streben</td>
<td>to strive for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suchen</td>
<td>to look for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telefonieren</td>
<td>to call for (a doctor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verlangen</td>
<td>to long for/crave</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**über + acc. (über always governs the accusative after verbs)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Verb</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sich ärgern</td>
<td>to be annoyed/irritated at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich freuen</td>
<td>to be glad/pleased about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>klagen</td>
<td>to complain about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lachen</td>
<td>to laugh about/at s.t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nachdenken</td>
<td>to think about/ponder on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
reden  to talk about
schreiben  to write about
spotten  to mock
sprechen  to talk about
sich unterhalten  to talk/converse about
urteilen  to judge s.t./pass judgement on
verfügen  to have at one’s disposal
weinen  to cry/weep about

um + acc.

 bangen  to worry about, fear for (one’s life)
beneiden  to envy s.o. s.t.
betteln  to beg for
sich bewerben  to apply for (a job)
bitten  to ask for
fürchten  to fear for (s.o.’s life)
sich handeln  to be a question/matter of
sich kümmern  to take care of/worry about

von + dat.

 abhängen  to depend on
befreien  to liberate/free from
sich erholen  to recover from
halten  to think (well) of s.o.
leben  to live on
überzeugen  to convince of
wimmeln  to swarm/teem with
wissen  to know of/about

vor + dat. (vor always governs the dative after verbs)

sich in Acht nehmen  to be on one’s guard against, to mind
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Verb</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Angst haben</td>
<td>to be afraid of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beschützen</td>
<td>to protect from s.o./s.t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fliehen</td>
<td>to flee from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich fürchten</td>
<td>to be afraid of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich hüten</td>
<td>to beware of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retten</td>
<td>to save s.o. from s.t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich schämen</td>
<td>to be ashamed in front of s.o.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sich) verbergen</td>
<td>to hide/conceal (oneself) from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warnen</td>
<td>to warn against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weichen</td>
<td>to give way to/yield to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weinen</td>
<td>to weep/cry for (joy)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**wegen + gen.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Verb</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loben</td>
<td>to praise for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sich schämen</td>
<td>to be ashamed of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tadeln</td>
<td>to reprimand for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**zu + dat.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German Verb</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beitragen</td>
<td>to contribute to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bewegen</td>
<td>to induce/move to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dienen</td>
<td>to serve as s.t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>einladen</td>
<td>to treat/invite to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>führen</td>
<td>to lead to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gehören</td>
<td>to belong to (a group, club)/be part of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gratulieren</td>
<td>to congratulate on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neigen</td>
<td>to tend to/towards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provozieren</td>
<td>to provoke to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raten</td>
<td>to advise to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sagen</td>
<td>to say to s.o. (also just dat.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It is sometimes the case that the object following many of the verbs given under 10.10 is a whole clause rather than a noun or pronoun. In such cases it is common practice with some verbs, and compulsory with others, to combine that verb’s preposition with da(r)- (see 7.1.4), thereby creating a prepositional adverb, before proceeding with the dependent clause, which might be either a subordinate clause (mostly introduced by dass) or an infinitive clause introduced by zu, e.g.

Er hat mich an ihren Geburtstag erinnert. (with a prepositional object)
He reminded me of her birthday.

Er hat mich daran erinnert, dass sie heute Geburtstag hat. (followed by a clause)
He reminded me (of the fact that) it’s her birthday today.

Er hat mich daran erinnert, ein Geburtstagsgeschenk für sie zu kaufen.
He reminded me to buy her a birthday present.

Where such constructions are required is not easy to give rules for, all the more so as not all verbs that take a prepositional object necessarily require it; it is often optional. The best advice that can be given is to do it when in doubt, e.g.

Sie hat mich (davon) überzeugt, dass es nicht der Mühe wert wäre.
She convinced me it would not be worth the effort.

Wir freuen uns (darauf), dass wir dieses Jahr wieder nach Australien reisen.
We’re looking forward to going to Australia again this year.
The meaning of the prepositional adverb in all these examples is something like ‘the fact that’, e.g. ‘We’re looking forward to the fact that we are going to Australia again this year.’

10.11 Transitive and intransitive verbs

Transitive verbs are those that can take a direct object and intransitive verbs are those that can’t. For example, ‘to lay’ (legen) and ‘to raise’ (erhöhen) can both take an object and are thus transitive, whereas ‘to lie’ (liegen) and ‘to rise’ (steigen) cannot take an object and are thus intransitive. As illustrated, German too uses separate verbs here. But verbs that can be used both transitively and intransitively in English may not necessarily be so in German, where you will need to use a different verb in each case. For example, if you want to say ‘He answered the question’ you will find in the dictionary under ‘to answer’ the words antworten and beantworten. A good dictionary will indicate that the former is intransitive and the latter transitive. The above example can thus be translated as either Er hat die Frage beantwortet or Er hat auf die Frage geantwortet (intransitive verbs often take prepositional objects, i.e. they are only capable of taking an object if connected to that object by a preposition; see 10.10).

It is not possible to give rules for such difficulties, but the following common examples will serve to illustrate what you have to be wary of:

- to burn = brennen (intr.): Das Haus brannte. The house was burning.
  verbrennen (trans.): Er verbrannte die Zeitschrift. He burnt the magazine.

- to leave = abfahren (intr.): Der Zug fuhr um zehn Uhr ab. The train left at ten o’clock.
  verlassen (trans.): Der Zug verließ Berlin um zehn Uhr. The train left Berlin at ten o’clock.

- to taste = schmecken (intr.): Dieser Apfel schmeckt gut. This apple tastes good.
  probieren (trans.): Probier mal diesen Apfel! Just taste this apple.
10.11.1 Use of sein and lassen with intransitive verbs

All verbs that take sein in the perfect (see 10.1.5.2) are intransitive, which is not to say that all intransitive verbs take sein, e.g.

**Er hat gelacht.**
The laughed.

This also explains why a verb like fahren, which normally takes sein, takes haben if it is ever used transitively, e.g.

**Er hat das neue Auto gefahren.**
He drove the new car.

It is not generally speaking usual for an intransitive verb to be used transitively like this in German. Another similar, although not identical, example is zerbrechen. When used with an object there is no problem, e.g.

**Ich habe die Tasse zerbrochen.**
I broke the cup.

But if this verb is used intransitively, it is seen as belonging to the category of verbs that render a change of state and thus sein is used, e.g.

**Die Tasse ist zerbrochen.**
The cup has broken.

A verb like explodieren, for example, can only be used intransitively, e.g.

**Die Bombe ist explodiert.**
The bomb exploded.

But ‘to explode’ can take an object in English and this is a typical instance where German resorts to lassen to be able to use such a verb with an object, e.g.

**Die Wissenschaftler haben eine Bombe explodieren lassen.**
The scientists exploded a bomb. (= made a bomb explode)

Here’s another example incorporating laufen (to run), a typical intransitive verb of motion that by definition cannot take a direct object, e.g.

**Ich habe das Pferd am Strand laufen lassen.**
I ran the horse along the beach.

To the German mind of course there is no difference in meaning between a sentence like the previous one and **Ich habe ein Haus bauen lassen** (where bauen is per chance a transitive verb), but which renders quite a different
English structure, i.e. ‘I had a house built’ (see 10.2.1.1). The above example could also be translated as ‘I had/let the horse run along the beach.’

**10.11.2 Intransitive verbs and the passive**

Intransitive verbs cannot generally be used in the passive as the passive is by definition a construction where the object of the active sentence becomes the subject (see 10.4), but see 10.4.6 for a few notable exceptions.

**10.12 List of irregular verbs**

The following list of all the most common irregular verbs groups the verbs according to their irregularities. What are called groups 1 to 7 here constitute the seven historical Ablaut series common to all Germanic languages, and thus those that are strictly speaking strong not just irregular verbs, and which you will need to be acquainted with if you go on to study the history of German. If, as will usually be the case, you merely want to learn the irregular verbs of German, it is useful to have them grouped according to their irregularities in order to get a feeling for the relatively consistent patterns that occur among irregular verbs.

For easy reference when wanting to check whether a given verb is irregular or not and, if so, how it is irregular, this list of verbs is repeated in 10.12.1, but in alphabetical order regardless of group. Remember that when checking on the irregularity of a verb, this list only contains root forms on the whole, not derived verbs, i.e. *einladen* (to invite), a verb with a separable prefix, is not in the list but *laden* (to load) is and of course *einladen* is conjugated in the same way. The same applies to verbs with unstressed prefixes, i.e. *erfinden* (to invent) is not in the list, but *finden* (to find) is.

Column 1 contains the infinitive, column 2 the third person sing. of the present tense where an irregularity may occur, column 3 the third person sing. of the imperfect, from which all other persons can be derived (see *schreiben, finden, halten* and *lesen* in 10.1.4.2), and column 4 contains the past participle together with the third person of the auxiliary verb when the auxiliary is either *sein* or both *haben* and *sein* (see perfect tense 10.1.5 for more on this).
### Group 1

This group contains verbs with *ei* in the infinitive but they follow one of two patterns, i.e. sub-groups a) and b):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a)</th>
<th>b)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bleiben</td>
<td>beißen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleibt</td>
<td>heißt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blieb</td>
<td>biss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ist geblieben</td>
<td>gebissen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leihen</td>
<td>gleichen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leiht</td>
<td>gleich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lieh</td>
<td>glich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geliehen</td>
<td>geglichen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meiden</td>
<td>gleiten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meidet</td>
<td>gleitet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mied</td>
<td>glitt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gemieden</td>
<td>ist geglitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preisen</td>
<td>greifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preist</td>
<td>greift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pries</td>
<td>griff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gepriesen</td>
<td>gegriffen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reiben</td>
<td>kneifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reibt</td>
<td>kneift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rieb</td>
<td>kniff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerieben</td>
<td>gekniffen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheiden</td>
<td>leiden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheidet</td>
<td>leidet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schied</td>
<td>litt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hat/ist geschieden</td>
<td>gelitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheinen</td>
<td>pfeifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheint</td>
<td>pfeift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schien</td>
<td>pfiff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geschienen</td>
<td>gepfiffen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schreiben</td>
<td>reißen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schreibt</td>
<td>reißt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schrieb</td>
<td>riss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geschrieben</td>
<td>hat/ist gerissen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schweigen</td>
<td>reiten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schweigt</td>
<td>reitet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwieg</td>
<td>ritt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geschwiegen</td>
<td>hat/ist geritten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steigen</td>
<td>scheißen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steigt</td>
<td>scheißt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stieg</td>
<td>schiss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ist gestiegen</td>
<td>geschissen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treiben</td>
<td>streichen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treibt</td>
<td>streicht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trieb</td>
<td>strich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getrieben</td>
<td>hat/ist gestrichen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verziehen</td>
<td>streiten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verzieht</td>
<td>streitet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verzieh</td>
<td>stritt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verziehen</td>
<td>gestritten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weisen</td>
<td>verbleichen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weist</td>
<td>verbleicht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wies</td>
<td>verblich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gewiesen</td>
<td>ist verblchen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**List of irregular verbs**
### Group 2

This group contains verbs with a variety of vowels in the infinitive, but most contain ie.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>befehlen</td>
<td>befiehlt</td>
<td>befahl</td>
<td>befohlen</td>
<td>to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biegen</td>
<td>biegts</td>
<td>bog</td>
<td>gebogen</td>
<td>to bend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bieten</td>
<td>bietet</td>
<td>bot</td>
<td>geboten</td>
<td>to offer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fliegen</td>
<td>fliegts</td>
<td>flog</td>
<td>hat/ist geflogen</td>
<td>to fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fliehen</td>
<td>fliehts</td>
<td>floh</td>
<td>ist geflohen</td>
<td>to flee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fließen</td>
<td>fließt</td>
<td>floss</td>
<td>ist geflossen</td>
<td>to flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frieren</td>
<td>friert</td>
<td>frot</td>
<td>hat/ist gefroren</td>
<td>to freeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genießen</td>
<td>genießt</td>
<td>genoss</td>
<td>genossen</td>
<td>to enjoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gießen</td>
<td>gießt</td>
<td>goss</td>
<td>gegossen</td>
<td>to pour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heben</td>
<td>hebt</td>
<td>hob</td>
<td>gehoben</td>
<td>to lift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kriechen</td>
<td>kriecht</td>
<td>kroch</td>
<td>ist gekrochen</td>
<td>to crawl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lügen</td>
<td>lügt</td>
<td>log</td>
<td>gelogen</td>
<td>to lie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riechen</td>
<td>riecht</td>
<td>roch</td>
<td>gerochen</td>
<td>to smell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saufen</td>
<td>säuft</td>
<td>soff</td>
<td>gesoffen</td>
<td>to booze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schelten</td>
<td>schilt</td>
<td>scholt</td>
<td>gescholten</td>
<td>to scold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schieben</td>
<td>schiebt</td>
<td>schob</td>
<td>geschoben</td>
<td>to push</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schließen</td>
<td>schließt</td>
<td>schloss</td>
<td>geschlossen</td>
<td>to shoot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schmelzen</td>
<td>schmilzt</td>
<td>schmolz</td>
<td>hat/ist geschmolzen</td>
<td>to melt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwellen</td>
<td>schwilt</td>
<td>schwoll</td>
<td>ist geschwollen</td>
<td>to swell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwören</td>
<td>schwört</td>
<td>schwor</td>
<td>geschworen</td>
<td>to swear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trügen</td>
<td>trügt</td>
<td>trog</td>
<td>getrogen</td>
<td>to deceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verlieren</td>
<td>verliert</td>
<td>verlor</td>
<td>verloren</td>
<td>to lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wiegen</td>
<td>wiegt</td>
<td>wog</td>
<td>gewogen</td>
<td>to weigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ziehen</td>
<td>zieht</td>
<td>zog</td>
<td>gezogen</td>
<td>to pull</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Group 3

The verbs in this group all have a stem that ends in n + another consonant.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>binden</td>
<td>bindet</td>
<td>band</td>
<td>gebunden</td>
<td>to tie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finden</td>
<td>findet</td>
<td>fand</td>
<td>gefunden</td>
<td>to find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelingen</td>
<td>gelingt</td>
<td>gelang</td>
<td>ist gelungen</td>
<td>to succeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>klingen</td>
<td>klingt</td>
<td>klang</td>
<td>geklungen</td>
<td>to sound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
schlingen  schlingt  schlang  geschlungen  to wind
schwinden  schwindet  schwand  ist geschwunden  to dwindle
schwingen  schwingt  schwang  hat/ist geschwungen  to swing
singen  singt  sang  gesungen  to sing
sinken  sinkt  sank  ist gesunken  to sink
springen  springt  sprang  ist gesprungen  to jump
stinken  stinkt  stank  gestunken  to stink
trinken  trinkt  trank  getrunken  to drink
zwingen  zwingt  zwang  gezwungen  to force

Group 4

beginnen  beginnt  begann  begonnen  to begin
bergen  birgt  barg  geborgen  to rescue
brechen  bricht  brach  gebrochen  to break
erschrecken  erschrickt  erschrak  ist erschrocken  to be startled
egbären  gebärt  gebär  geboren  to give birth
gelten  gilt  galt  gegolten  to be valid
gewinnen  gewinnt  gewann  gewonnen  to win
helfen  hilft  half  geholfen  to help
kommen  kommt  kam  ist gekommen  to come
nehmen  nimmt  nahm  genommen  to take
schwimmen  schwimmt  schwamm  hat/ist geschwommen  to swim
spinnen  spinnt  spann  gesponnen  to spin
sprechen  spricht  sprach  gesprochen  to speak
stechen  sticht  stach  gestochen  to sting
stehlen  stiehlt  stahl  gestohlen  to steal
sterben  stirbt  starb  ist gestorben  to die
treffen  trifft  traf  getroffen  to meet
verderben  verdirbt  verdarb  hat/ist verdorben  to spoil
werben  wirbt  warb  geworben  to recruit
werfen  wirft  warf  geworfen  to throw

Group 5

The verbs in this group, generally speaking, differ from those in group 4 in that the vowel of the infinitive usually recurs in the past participle.
Verbs

bitten  bittet  bat  gebeten  to ask
essen  isst  ab  gegessen  to eat
fressen  frisst  fraß  gegessen  to eat, scoff
geben  gibt  gab  gegeben  to give
genesen  genest  genas  ist genesen  to recover
geschehen  geschieht  geschah  ist geschehen  to happen
lesen  liest  las  gelesen  to read
liegen  liegt  lag  gelegen  to lie
messen  misst  maß  gemessen  to measure
sehen  sieht  sah  gesehen  to see
sitzen  sitzt  saß  gesessen  to sit
treten  tritt  trat  hat/ist getreten  to tread
vergessen  vergisst  vergaß  vergessen  to forget

Group 6

The verbs in this group all have in common that the vowel of the infinitive recurs in the past participle and this vowel is always an a, which is not the case in group 5.

fahren  fährt  fuhr  hat/ist gefahren  to drive
graben  gräbt  grub  gegraben  to dig
laden  lädt  lud  geladen  to load
schaffen  schafft  schuf  geschaffen  to create
schlagen  schlägt  schlug  geschlagen  to hit
tragen  trägt  trug  getragen  to carry
wachsen  wächst  wuchs  ist gewachsen  to grow
waschen  wäscht  wusch  gewaschen  to wash

Group 7

This group contains verbs that follow one of two patterns in the imperfect. What they all have in common is that the vowel of the infinitive recurs in the past participle.

a) blasen  bläst  blies  geblasen  to blow
braten  brät  briet  gebraten  to roast
fallen  fällt  fiel  ist gefallen  to fall
halt\textemdash hält \textemdash hielt \textemdash gehalten \quad to hold
heiß\textemdash heiβt \textemdash hiess \textemdash geheißen \quad to be called
lassen \textemdash lässt \textemdash ließ \textemdash gelassen \quad to let, leave
laufen \textemdash läuft \textemdash lief \textemdash ist gelaufen \quad to run
raten \textemdash rät \textemdash riet \textemdash geraten \quad to advise
rufen \textemdash ruft \textemdash rief \textemdash gerufen \quad to call
schlafen \textemdash schläft \textemdash schließ \textemdash geschlafen \quad to sleep
stoßen \textemdash stößt \textemdash stieß \textemdash gestoßen \quad to push

b)

fangen \textemdash fängt \textemdash fing \textemdash gefangen \quad to catch
gehen \textemdash geht \textemdash ging \textemdash ist gegangen \quad to go
hängen \textemdash hängt \textemdash hing \textemdash gehangen \quad to hang

totally irregular verbs that don’t follow any of the above seven patterns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>haben</th>
<th>hat</th>
<th>hatte</th>
<th>gehabt</th>
<th>to have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sein</td>
<td>ist</td>
<td>war</td>
<td>ist gewesen</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stehen</td>
<td>steht</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>gestanden</td>
<td>to stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tun</td>
<td>tut</td>
<td>tat</td>
<td>getan</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>werden</td>
<td>wird</td>
<td>wurde</td>
<td>ist geworden</td>
<td>to become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wissen</td>
<td>weiß</td>
<td>wusste</td>
<td>gewusst</td>
<td>to know</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

mixed verbs a)

Verbs in this group are mixed in the sense that the imperfect is regular but the past participle is irregular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>backen</th>
<th>backt</th>
<th>backte</th>
<th>gebacken</th>
<th>to bake</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mahlen</td>
<td>mahlt</td>
<td>mahlte</td>
<td>gemahlen</td>
<td>to grind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salzen</td>
<td>salzt</td>
<td>salzte</td>
<td>gesalzen</td>
<td>to salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spalten</td>
<td>spaltet</td>
<td>spaltete</td>
<td>gespalten</td>
<td>to split</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

mixed verbs b)

Verbs in this group are mixed in the sense that they have a vowel change in the past tenses like a strong verb, but the imperfect ends in -te etc. and the
past participle ends in -t like a weak verb. Senden and wenden both have alternative weak forms, i.e. sendete/wendete and gesendet/gewandt.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Alternative Weak Forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brennen</td>
<td>brennt</td>
<td>brannte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bringen</td>
<td>bringt</td>
<td>brachte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denken</td>
<td>denkt</td>
<td>dachte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kennen</td>
<td>kennt</td>
<td>kannte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nennen</td>
<td>nennt</td>
<td>nannte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rennen</td>
<td>rennt</td>
<td>rannte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senden</td>
<td>sendet</td>
<td>sandte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wenden</td>
<td>wendet</td>
<td>wandte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Modal verbs (see 10.2)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Alternative Weak Forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dürfen</td>
<td>darf</td>
<td>durfte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>können</td>
<td>kann</td>
<td>konnte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mögen</td>
<td>mag</td>
<td>mochte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>müssen</td>
<td>muss</td>
<td>musste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sollen</td>
<td>soll</td>
<td>sollte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wollen</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>wollte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**10.12.1 Alphabetical list of irregular verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Alternative Weak Forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>backen</td>
<td>backt</td>
<td>backte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>befehlen</td>
<td>befiehlt</td>
<td>befahl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beginnen</td>
<td>beginnt</td>
<td>begann</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beißen</td>
<td>beißt</td>
<td>biss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bergen</td>
<td>birgt</td>
<td>barg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biegen</td>
<td>biegt</td>
<td>bog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bieten</td>
<td>bietet</td>
<td>bot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>binden</td>
<td>bindet</td>
<td>band</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitten</td>
<td>bittet</td>
<td>bat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blasen</td>
<td>bläst</td>
<td>blies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleiben</td>
<td>bleibt</td>
<td>blieb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braten</td>
<td>brät</td>
<td>briet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brechen</td>
<td>bricht</td>
<td>brach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brennen</td>
<td>brennt</td>
<td>brannte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Alternative Weak Forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to bake</td>
<td>gebacken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to command</td>
<td>befohlen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to begin</td>
<td>begonnen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to bite</td>
<td>gebissen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to rescue</td>
<td>geborgen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to bend</td>
<td>gebogen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to offer</td>
<td>geboten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to tie</td>
<td>gebunden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to ask</td>
<td>gebeten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to blow</td>
<td>geblasen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to remain</td>
<td>ist geblieben</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to roast</td>
<td>gebraten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to break</td>
<td>gebrochen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to burn</td>
<td>gebrannt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bringen</td>
<td>bringt</td>
<td>brachte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denken</td>
<td>denkt</td>
<td>dachte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dürfen</td>
<td>darf</td>
<td>durfte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erschrecken</td>
<td>erschrickt</td>
<td>erschrak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essen</td>
<td>isst</td>
<td>aß</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fahren</td>
<td>fährt</td>
<td>fuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fallen</td>
<td>fällt</td>
<td>fiel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fangen</td>
<td>fängt</td>
<td>fing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finden</td>
<td>findet</td>
<td>fand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fliegen</td>
<td>fliegt</td>
<td>flog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fließen</td>
<td>flieht</td>
<td>floh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fressen</td>
<td>frisst</td>
<td>fraß</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frieren</td>
<td>friert</td>
<td>fror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gebären</td>
<td>gebärt</td>
<td>gebar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geben</td>
<td>gibt</td>
<td>gab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gehen</td>
<td>geht</td>
<td>ging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelernt</td>
<td>gelingt</td>
<td>gelang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geniesse</td>
<td>genießt</td>
<td>genoss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geschehen</td>
<td>geschieht</td>
<td>geschah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gewinnen</td>
<td>gewinnt</td>
<td>gewann</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gießen</td>
<td>gießt</td>
<td>goss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gleichen</td>
<td>gleicht</td>
<td>glisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gleiten</td>
<td>gleitet</td>
<td>glitt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graben</td>
<td>gräbt</td>
<td>grub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greifen</td>
<td>greift</td>
<td>griff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haben</td>
<td>hat</td>
<td>hatte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halten</td>
<td>hält</td>
<td>hielt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hängen</td>
<td>hängt</td>
<td>hing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heben</td>
<td>hebt</td>
<td>hob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heßen</td>
<td>heißt</td>
<td>hieß</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helfen</td>
<td>hilft</td>
<td>half</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kennen</td>
<td>kennt</td>
<td>kannte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>klingen</td>
<td>klingt</td>
<td>klang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kneifen</td>
<td>kneift</td>
<td>kniff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kommen</td>
<td>kommt</td>
<td>kam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>können</td>
<td>kann</td>
<td>konnte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kriechen</td>
<td>kriecht</td>
<td>kroch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laden</td>
<td>lädt</td>
<td>lud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German Word</td>
<td>German Verb Form</td>
<td>English Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lassen</td>
<td>lässt</td>
<td>to let, leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laufen</td>
<td>läuft</td>
<td>to run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leiden</td>
<td>leidet</td>
<td>to suffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leihen</td>
<td>leiht</td>
<td>to lend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesen</td>
<td>liest</td>
<td>to read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liegen</td>
<td>liegt</td>
<td>to lie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lügen</td>
<td>lägt</td>
<td>to lie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mahlen</td>
<td>mahlt</td>
<td>to grind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meiden</td>
<td>meidet</td>
<td>to avoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messen</td>
<td>misst</td>
<td>to measure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mögen</td>
<td>mag</td>
<td>may, to like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>müssen</td>
<td>muss</td>
<td>must</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nehmen</td>
<td>nimmt</td>
<td>to take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nennen</td>
<td>nennt</td>
<td>to name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pfeifen</td>
<td>pfeift</td>
<td>to whistle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preisen</td>
<td>preist</td>
<td>to praise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raten</td>
<td>rät</td>
<td>to advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reiben</td>
<td>reibt</td>
<td>to rub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reißen</td>
<td>reißt</td>
<td>to tear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reiten</td>
<td>reitet</td>
<td>to ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rennen</td>
<td>rennt</td>
<td>to run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riechen</td>
<td>riecht</td>
<td>to smell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rufen</td>
<td>ruft</td>
<td>to call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salzen</td>
<td>salzt</td>
<td>to salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saufen</td>
<td>säuft</td>
<td>to booze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schaffen</td>
<td>schafft</td>
<td>to create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheiden</td>
<td>scheidet</td>
<td>to separate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheinen</td>
<td>scheint</td>
<td>to shine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheißen</td>
<td>scheißt</td>
<td>to shit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schelten</td>
<td>schilt</td>
<td>to scold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schieben</td>
<td>schiebt</td>
<td>to push</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schießten</td>
<td>schließt</td>
<td>to shoot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schlafen</td>
<td>schlächt</td>
<td>to sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schlagen</td>
<td>schlägt</td>
<td>to hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schleichen</td>
<td>schleicht</td>
<td>to sneak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schließen</td>
<td>schlückt</td>
<td>to shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schlingten</td>
<td>schlängt</td>
<td>to wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schmeißen</td>
<td>schmeißt</td>
<td>to chuck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schmelzen</td>
<td>schmilzt</td>
<td>to melt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ist geschmolzen</td>
<td></td>
<td>to melt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Bedeutung</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schneiden</td>
<td>schneidet</td>
<td>schnitt</td>
<td>to cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schreiben</td>
<td>schreibt</td>
<td>schrieb</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schreiten</td>
<td>schreitet</td>
<td>schritt</td>
<td>to stride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schweigen</td>
<td>schweigt</td>
<td>schieg</td>
<td>to be silent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwellen</td>
<td>schwellt</td>
<td>schwoll</td>
<td>to swell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwimmen</td>
<td>schwimmt</td>
<td>schwamm</td>
<td>to swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwinden</td>
<td>schwindet</td>
<td>schwand</td>
<td>to disappear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwingen</td>
<td>schwingt</td>
<td>schwang</td>
<td>to swing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schreiben</td>
<td>schreibt</td>
<td>geschrieben</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schreiten</td>
<td>schreitet</td>
<td>ist geschritten</td>
<td>to stride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schweigen</td>
<td>schweigt</td>
<td>geschwiegen</td>
<td>to be silent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwellen</td>
<td>schwellt</td>
<td>ist geschwollen</td>
<td>to swell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwimmen</td>
<td>schwimmt</td>
<td>hat/</td>
<td>to swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwinden</td>
<td>schwindet</td>
<td>ist geschwommen</td>
<td>to disappear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schwingen</td>
<td>schwingt</td>
<td>ist geschwungen</td>
<td>to swing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sehen</td>
<td>sieht</td>
<td>gesehen</td>
<td>to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sein</td>
<td>ist</td>
<td>war</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senden</td>
<td>sendet</td>
<td>gesandt</td>
<td>to send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singen</td>
<td>singt</td>
<td>gesungen</td>
<td>to sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinken</td>
<td>sinkt</td>
<td>ist gesunken</td>
<td>to sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sitzen</td>
<td>sitzt</td>
<td>gesessen</td>
<td>to sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sollen</td>
<td>soll</td>
<td>gesollt</td>
<td>shall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spalten</td>
<td>spaltet</td>
<td>gespalten</td>
<td>to split</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spinnen</td>
<td>spinnt</td>
<td>gesponnen</td>
<td>to spin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprechen</td>
<td>spricht</td>
<td>gesprochen</td>
<td>to speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>springen</td>
<td>springt</td>
<td>ist gesprungen</td>
<td>to jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stechen</td>
<td>sticht</td>
<td>gestochen</td>
<td>to sting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stehen</td>
<td>steht</td>
<td>gestanden</td>
<td>to stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stehlen</td>
<td>stiehlt</td>
<td>gestohlen</td>
<td>to steal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steigen</td>
<td>steigt</td>
<td>ist gestiegen</td>
<td>to climb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sterben</td>
<td>stirbt</td>
<td>gestorben</td>
<td>to die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stinken</td>
<td>stinkt</td>
<td>gestunken</td>
<td>to stink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stoßen</td>
<td>stößt</td>
<td>gestoßen</td>
<td>to push</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>streichen</td>
<td>streicht</td>
<td>hat/</td>
<td>to stroke,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>streiten</td>
<td>streitet</td>
<td>ist gestrichen</td>
<td>rub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tragen</td>
<td>trägt</td>
<td>getragen</td>
<td>to carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treffen</td>
<td>trifft</td>
<td>getroffen</td>
<td>to meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treiben</td>
<td>treibt</td>
<td>getrieben</td>
<td>to drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treten</td>
<td>tritt</td>
<td>hat/ist getreten</td>
<td>to tread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trinken</td>
<td>trinkt</td>
<td>getrunken</td>
<td>to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trügen</td>
<td>trägt</td>
<td>getrogen</td>
<td>to deceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tun</td>
<td>tut</td>
<td>getan</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbleichen</td>
<td>verbleicht</td>
<td>ist verblichen</td>
<td>to fade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs</td>
<td>Past Tense</td>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verderben</td>
<td>verdirbt</td>
<td>verdarb hat/</td>
<td>to spoil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vergessen</td>
<td>vergisst</td>
<td>vergaß ist verdorben</td>
<td>to forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verlieren</td>
<td>verliert</td>
<td>verlor verloren</td>
<td>to lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verzeihen</td>
<td>verzeiht</td>
<td>verzieh verziehen</td>
<td>to forgive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wachsen</td>
<td>wächst</td>
<td>wuchs ist gewachsen</td>
<td>to grow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waschen</td>
<td>wäscht</td>
<td>wusch gewaschen</td>
<td>to wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weisen</td>
<td>weist</td>
<td>wies gewiesen</td>
<td>to point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wenden</td>
<td>wendet</td>
<td>wandte gewandt</td>
<td>to turn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>werben</td>
<td>wirbt</td>
<td>warb geworben</td>
<td>to recruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>werden</td>
<td>wird</td>
<td>wurde ist geworden</td>
<td>to become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>werfen</td>
<td>wirft</td>
<td>warf geworfen</td>
<td>to throw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wiegen</td>
<td>wiegt</td>
<td>wog gewogen</td>
<td>to weigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wissen</td>
<td>weiß</td>
<td>wusste gewusst</td>
<td>to know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wollen</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>wollte gewollt</td>
<td>will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ziehen</td>
<td>zieht</td>
<td>zog gezogen</td>
<td>to pull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zwingen</td>
<td>zwingt</td>
<td>zwang gezwungen</td>
<td>to force</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A sentence that consists of just one clause, i.e. one that has just one finite verb, contains simply a main clause. A sentence that has more than one clause, i.e. one that has more than one finite verb, is a compound or complex sentence as it consists of more than simply a main clause; the additional clause or clauses must by necessity be either coordinate or subordinate clauses, which means they are joined to the main clause by means of either a coordinating or a subordinating conjunction. These conjunctions or joining words have important ramifications for word order in German and they are the topic of this chapter.

German employs a handy syntactical tool that is unknown in English when stringing clauses together to make compound and complex sentences.

A compound sentence is one that consists of a main clause plus one or more coordinate clauses, i.e. a clause joined to the main clause by means of a coordinating conjunction which has no effect on word order, thereby indicating that both clauses are of equal value (see 11.1).

A complex sentence is one that consists of a main clause plus one or more subordinate clauses, i.e. a clause joined to the main clause by means of a subordinating conjunction which does have an effect on the word order of the subordinate clause – it sends the finite verb of the subordinate clause to the end of that clause, thereby indicating that this clause is dependent on the main clause (see 11.2).

In English, where this distinction in word order does not exist, the difference between a coordinating and a subordinating conjunction lies in the fact that you cannot put the coordinate clause before the main clause, whereas this is always possible with subordinate clauses in both languages, e.g.

Er hat selbst keine Kinder, aber er hat Kinder sehr gern. (only possibility)
He has no children himself but he likes children a lot.
Er hat ihr gekündigt, weil sie immer zu spät ins Büro gekommen ist.
He fired her because she always arrived late at the office.

Weil sie immer zu spät ins Büro gekommen ist, hat er ihr gekündigt.
Because she always arrived late at the office, he fired her.

Note: The footnote numbers next to the conjunctions in the lists below do not indicate true footnotes but refer to the notes that follow these lists.

### 11.1 Coordinating conjunctions

The main distinguishing feature of a coordinating conjunction in German is that it does not have any effect on the word order of the following clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>Equivalent in English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aber</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denn(^1)</td>
<td>for, because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oder</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sondern(^2)</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>und</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Er hat selbst keine Kinder, aber er hat Kinder sehr gern.
He has no children himself but he likes children a lot.

Die Bäckerei hatte heute Morgen zu, denn der Bäcker war krank.
The bakery was shut this morning for (= because) the baker was sick.

Kommst du heute(,) oder komst du morgen?
Are you coming today or tomorrow?

Die Schmidts haben ein Ferienhaus an der Küste(,) und sie verbringen jeden Sommer dort.
The Schmidts have a holiday home on the coast and they spend every summer there.

Previously a comma was always placed between such clauses but the new spelling (since 1998) has made a comma before oder and und optional. Note, however, that if the subject of the coordinate clause is in the main clause, i.e. it is not repeated in the second clause, you must not separate the finite verb in that clause from its subject in the first clause as the second clause is seen to be not totally independent, e.g.
Die Schmidts haben ein Ferienhaus an der Küste und verbringen jeden Sommer dort. (sie has been omitted before verbringen).

Notes:

1  The conjunction ‘for’ is rather formal in English and is usually replaced by ‘because’, but in German the reverse is the case. A sentence such as ‘He dropped the cup because it was too hot’ would usually be rendered Er hat die Tasse fallen lassen, denn sie war zu heiß, although weil plus subordinate word order would be quite correct too: Er hat die Tasse fallen lassen, weil sie zu heiß war. Just as English ‘because’ cannot always be replaced by ‘for’, so weil cannot always be replaced by denn, i.e. when a complex sentence begins with the dependent clause, then ‘because’ and weil must be used:

   Weil die Tasse zu heiß war, hat er sie fallen lassen.
   Because the cup was too hot, he dropped it.

2  Sondern is used instead of aber to translate ‘but’ when the main clause contains a negative and the but-clause contradicts the main clause, e.g.

   Wir gehen zu Weihnachten nicht zu meinen Eltern, sondern (wir gehen) zu meinen Schwiegereltern.
   We are not going to my parents’ place for Christmas but (we’re going) to my parents-in-laws’.

   Er kommt nicht am Montag zurück, sondern am Dienstag.
   He’s not returning on Monday but on Tuesday

For word order with adverbs of time in coordinate clauses see 9.4.5.

11.2 Subordinating conjunctions

There is a large number of such conjunctions, most of which are listed below. The distinguishing feature of these is that the verb of the dependent clause is sent to the end of that clause. The following pitfalls with subordinating conjunctions should be noted.

Be careful with word order when a subordinating conjunction governs two subordinate clauses which are joined by a coordinating conjunction, e.g.

   Ich bin zu Hause geblieben, weil ich etwas erkältet war und (weil) im Büro sowieso nicht viel los war.
   I stayed home because I had a bit of a cold and (because) there wasn’t much to do at the office anyway.
Was war sie froh, als sie seine Stimme hörte und (als sie) sein Gesicht wieder sah.
How glad she was when she heard his voice and (when she) saw his face again.

Unsere Freunde hatten uns gesagt, dass es eine sehr interessante Ortschaft sei und (dass) wir da unbedingt ein paar Tage verbringen sollten.
Our friends had told us that it was a very interesting place and (that) we should definitely spend a few days there.

It is nearly always possible for stylistic reasons in both English and German to place a subordinate clause in front of the main clause in a complex sentence. In English this has no effect on word order but in German the subordinate clause assumes the role of first idea in the main clause (i.e. in the sentence as a whole) and thus inversion of subject and verb is required in the main clause. It is compulsory to insert a comma between the two clauses to keep the finite verbs of each clause apart, e.g.

Ich machte die Betten, während meine Frau abwusch.
I made the beds while my wife washed up.

Während meine Frau abwusch, machte ich die Betten.
While my wife washed up I made the beds.

When a coordinating conjunction is followed by a subordinating conjunction, the subordinating one governs the word order of the following clause, but not that of the coordinate clause in which it is embedded; the subject and verb of the following coordinate clause invert as above because the subordinating clause takes on the role of first idea in the overall sentence:

Ich bleibe zu Hause, und weil ich nicht gut geschlafen habe, gehe ich wieder ins Bett.
I'm staying home and because I didn't sleep well, I'm going back to bed.

A subordinate clause can be embedded in another subordinate clause, in which case you must remember to put the verb of the interrupted clause to the end when you return to it. In the following example, which is stylistically not ideal but nevertheless possible, wenn man eine Fremdsprache lernt has been embedded in the clause dass man gewöhnlich seine eigene Sprache besser verstehen kann, e.g.

Ich meine, dass, wenn man eine Fremdsprache lernt, man gewöhnlich seine eigene Sprache besser verstehen kann.
I think that if you learn a foreign language you can usually understand your own language better.
This is stylistically better expressed as follows and the above problem is avoided:

Ich meine, dass man gewöhnlich seine eigene Sprache besser verstehen kann, wenn man eine Fremdsprache lernt.

Get into the habit of completing your clauses before launching off into a new one and problems of word order as illustrated here will not occur.

- als\(^{1,2}\)  
  when; than

- als ob
  as if

- auch wenn
  even if, even though

- bevor\(^3\)
  before

- bis\(^4\)
  until

- da\(^5\)
  since, as

- damit\(^6\)
  so that (purpose)

- dass\(^7\)
  that

- indem\(^8\)
  by

- nachdem\(^9\)
  after

- ob\(^{10}\)
  whether, if

- obwohl
  although

- seit(dem)\(^{11}\)
  since (temporal)

- so dass\(^6\)
  so that (result)

- sobald
  as soon as

- solange
  as long as

- soweit, sofern
  as far as

- während\(^{12}\)
  while, whilst

- weil\(^{13}\)
  because, as, since

- wenn\(^1\)
  when, if

- wie\(^{14}\)
  as

- anstatt dass\(^{15}\)
  instead of

- ohne dass\(^{15}\)
  without
Interrogatives (question words)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>German</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wann1,16</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warum16</td>
<td>why</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was16</td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wer/wen/wem16</td>
<td>who/whom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wie14,16</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wie viel(e)16</td>
<td>how much (many)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wo16</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woher16</td>
<td>where (from)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wohin16</td>
<td>where (to)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1 The translation of English ‘when’ into German is a complex issue. There are three words: als, wann and wenn.

Wann, as an interrogative (question word, see 9.7) rather than a subordinating conjunction, must always be used in both direct and indirect questions, e.g.

Wann kommt er nach Hause? (direct question)
When is he coming home?

Ich weiß nicht, wann er nach Hause kommt. (indirect question)
I don’t know when he is coming home.

Wenn is used to translate ‘when’ in subordinate clauses when the verb is in the present or future tense, e.g.

Wenn das Wetter im Juli schön ist, fahren wir nicht in Urlaub sondern bleiben lieber zu Hause
When/if the weather is fine in July, we don’t go on holiday but prefer to stay at home.

As this example illustrates, the subtle distinction between ‘when’ and ‘if’ is not made in German. See 10.3.2.2 for cases where wenn meaning ‘if’ is omitted.

Wenn can only be used with a verb in the past when it means ‘whenever’ (see 7.7.e), i.e. ‘when on repeated occasions’, otherwise als is used (see below), e.g.

Wenn er in Großbritannien war, hat er immer seine Tante in Chester besucht.
Whenever he was in the UK, he would always visit his aunt in Chester.

Als is used, not wenn, when the verb is in the past, i.e. when the meaning is ‘when on one occasion’, e.g.
Als er in Großbritannien war, hat er seine Tante in Chester besucht.
When he was in the UK, he visited his aunt in Chester.

2 ‘Than’ as used after comparatives (see 8.2.1) is als; it is often followed simply by a noun or pronoun rather than a whole clause.

Er ist größer als ich
He is taller than I.

Er hat's besser gemacht, als ich es hätte machen können.
He did it better than I could have done it.

3 Take care when translating ‘before’ as this can be either an adverb (e.g. nie zuvor ‘never before’), a preposition (vor dem Abendessen ‘before dinner’, see 5.1.1.d and 12.3.h) or a conjunction, e.g.

Ich versuchte mit ihm zu reden, bevor der Film begann.
I tried to talk to him before the film began.

4 Bis, like ‘until/till’, is also a preposition (see 12.1), which function must not be confused with its function as a conjunction, e.g.

Er hat die ganze Nacht hindurch bis zum Sonnenaufgang gearbeitet. (prep.)
He worked right through the night till sunrise.

Er hat die ganze Nacht hindurch gearbeitet, bis die Sonne aufging. (conj.)
He worked right through the night till the sun came up.

5 Da only translates ‘since’ where ‘since’ has the meaning of ‘because/as’, e.g.

Da das Konzert eine Viertelstunde zu spät angefangen hat, haben wir glücklicherweise nichts verpasst.
Since/as the concert started 15 minutes late we fortunately didn’t miss anything.

6 Damit means ‘so that’ in the sense of ‘with the purpose of’ whereas so dass means ‘so that’ in the sense of ‘with the result that’, e.g.

Nimm einen Schirm mit, damit du nicht nass wirst.
Take an umbrella with you so you don’t get wet.

Ich habe vergessen einen Schirm mitzunehmen, so dass ich durch und durch nass geworden bin.
I forgot to take an umbrella with me so that I got wet through.

7 The subordinating conjunction ‘that’ is often omitted in English but dass is never omitted in German (see 10.3.1.1 for the one possible exception), e.g.
Ich weiß, dass er so was nie versprochen hätte.
I know (that) he would never have promised anything like that.

Das erste Mal, dass sie es erwähnt hat, war ich erstaunt.
The first time (that) she mentioned it, I was amazed.

Not only the subordinating conjunction ‘that’ is dropped in English but also the relative pronoun ‘that’; nor may this pronoun ever be omitted in German (see 7.6).

8 Indem means ‘by’ and introduces a clause that expresses ‘by doing something’, e.g.

Ich trage der Luftverschmutzung weniger bei, indem ich jeden Tag mit dem Rad zur Arbeit fahre.
I contribute less to air pollution by cycling to work every day.

9 Nachdem renders the conjunction ‘after’, whereas nach renders the preposition (see 12.2), e.g.

Nachdem die Verkäuferin mich bedient hat, hat sie den schönen, jungen Mann hinter mir bedient, statt der alten Dame, die an der Reihe war. (conjunction)
After the shop assistant served me, she served the handsome young man behind me instead of the old lady whose turn it was.

Gleich nach mir hat sie den schönen, jungen Mann bedient. (preposition)
She served the handsome young man immediately after me.

10 Ob means ‘whether’, but must also be used to translate any ‘if’ that is interchangeable with ‘whether’; otherwise ‘if’ must be rendered by wenn (see note 1 above), e.g.

Ich weiß nicht, ob er morgen oder übermorgen abfährt.
I do not know if/whether he is leaving tomorrow or the next day.

11 Take care when translating ‘since’ as this can be either an adverb, a preposition or a conjunction, e.g.

Ich habe ihn seitdem/seither nie wiedergesehen. (adverb)
I haven’t seen him (again) since.

Ich habe ihn seit letzter Woche nicht gesehen. (preposition)
I haven’t seen him since last week.

Seit(dem) er in Bremen wohnt, habe ich ihn nicht wiedergesehen. (conjunction)
Since he’s been living in Bremen I haven’t seen him again.

12 Während is both a preposition meaning ‘during’ (see 12.4) and a conjunction meaning ‘while/whilst’, but context always makes its function clear, e.g.
Er wollte ständig während des Films mit mir reden.
(preposition)
He continually wanted to talk to me during the film.

Der Sturm hat angefangen, während wir im Kino saßen.
(conjunction)
The storm began while we were sitting in the cinema.

13 Weil translates ‘because’ but you will frequently hear denn (lit. ‘for’ in the sense of ‘because’) being used (see 11.1). As weil and denn are synonymous, coordinate word order is commonly heard after weil in colloquial German, but do not copy it; you will never see it in writing and Germans are generally unaware that they do it in speech, e.g.

Er hat ihr nicht helfen wollen, weil sie ihm früher auch nicht geholfen hatte.
Er hat ihr nicht helfen wollen, denn (weil?) sie hatte ihm früher auch nicht geholfen.
He didn’t want to help her because she hadn’t helped him previously.

14 The conjunction ‘as’ is rendered by wie, as is ‘how’ (see reference to 9.7 in note 16 below), e.g.

Wie du hören kannst, kann er immer noch gut Deutsch.
As you can hear, he still speaks German well.

Er kann Deutsch genau so gut wie du.
He speaks German just as well as you (do).

Wie is commonly used with hören and sehen when you ‘see/hear’ s.o. doing s.t., but this can also be expressed by the infinitive without the need for a subordinate clause (see 10.2.1.1), e.g.

Ich hörte/sah, wie er die Treppe heraufkam.
Ich habe ihn die Treppe heraufkommen hören/sehen.
I heard/saw him come/coming up the stairs.

15 See conjunctions introducing infinitive clauses under 11.3.

16 In clauses introduced by these interrogatives (see 9.7) the verb is always in second position in a direct question, but in an indirect question the finite verb is sent to the end of the clause, in which case these words all behave like subordinating conjunctions, e.g.

Wann kommt sie aus Japan zurück? (direct question)
When is she returning from Japan?

Ich habe keine Ahnung, wann sie aus Japan zurückkehrt.
(indirect question)
I haven’t any idea when she’s coming back from Japan.
For how to say ‘whenever’, ‘wherever’ etc. see 7.7.e.

11.3 Conjunctions introducing infinitive clauses

Infinitive clauses contain no finite verb but rather an infinitive preceded by **zu**. The subject of an infinitive clause is the same as that of the main clause and thus repetition of the subject and a finite verb is unnecessary. **Um** is by far the most common of these three conjunctions.

- **um**\(^1\) in order to, only to (a much less common meaning)
- **(an)statt**\(^2\) instead of
- **ohne**\(^2\) without

Notes:

1. Where ‘to’ before an infinitive can be replaced by ‘in order to’ you require **um ... zu** (see 10.5.3), e.g.

   *Er hat ein Taxi nach Hause genommen, um seine Schlüssel zu holen.*

   He took a taxi home (in order) to fetch his keys.

   Compare the following example where ‘in order to’ cannot be substituted, thereby indicating that **zu** alone is sufficient (see 10.5.2):

   *Er hat versucht, ihr zu helfen.*

   He tried to help her.

   Occasionally **um ... zu** occurs in German where in English we say ‘only to ...’; the German looks ambiguous but context makes it clear whether **um ... zu** means ‘in order to’ or ‘only ... to’, e.g.

   *Das Flugzeug startete ohne Problem, um plötzlich einige Kilometer vom Flughafen entfernt abzustürzen.*

   The plane took off without a problem only to suddenly crash a few kilometres from the airport. (obviously it did not take off in order to crash)

2. **(An)statt** and **ohne** are also both prepositions (see 12.4 and 12.1 respectively), but as conjunctions there is a complication associated with them that is unique to them. When they introduce a clause that has the same subject as that of the main clause, they introduce an infinitive clause and are thus used in combination with **zu**, e.g.

   *Er hat bei mir zu Hause gegessen, (an)statt allein in der Stadt zu essen.*

   He ate at my place instead of eating alone in town.
(i.e. he ate at my place and he would otherwise have eaten alone in town)

Er kam herein, ohne ein Wort zu sagen.
He came in without saying a word.
(i.e. he came in and he said nothing)

But when the performer of the action in the two clauses is different, an infinitive clause is no longer possible and must be replaced by a subordinate clause, which requires the use of dass, e.g.

Er hat ihr das Geld geliehen, (an)statt dass ich es machen musste.
He lent her the money instead of me/my having to.
(i.e. he her lent her the money and I didn’t have to)

Er kam herein, ohne dass ich ihn sah.
He came in without me/my seeing him.
(i.e. he came in and I didn’t see him)

11.4 Correlative conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions are couplets of coordinating conjunctions that correlate two clauses of a sentence, i.e. each clause begins with a conjunction that forms a sense pair with the other. More often than not the second clause is not completed but is implied, but if it is included, it too employs coordinate word order, i.e. the finite verb is not sent to the end of the clause.

entweder … oder
either … or

weder … noch
neither … nor

sowie … als/wie auch
both … and/as well as

nicht nur … sondern auch
not only … but also

Entweder du bringst deinen Mann mit, oder du kommst überhaupt nicht.
Either you bring your husband along or you don’t come at all.

Ich habe sie leider weder nach Hause noch zum Bus bringen können.
Unfortunately I was able neither to take her home nor to take her to the bus.
Sowohl der Lehrer wie auch alle in der Klasse hatten den Roman gelesen.
Both the teacher and/as well as everyone in the class had read the novel.

Nicht nur die Jungen, sondern auch die Mädchen haben Fußball gespielt.
Not only the boys played football but also the girls.
Because prepositions are the most idiomatic part of speech, each with a vast number of meanings in many cases, the following can only serve as a guide to the usage of German prepositions. To have listed English prepositions with their various translations into German would have been unwieldy and the student would have been prevented from getting a feeling for the nuances of meaning associated with each individual German preposition. By doing the reverse you can get some idea of the various meanings of each German preposition. It should be noted that some prepositions can be used as adverbs too, e.g.

**Das Geschäft ist zu.**
The shop is shut.

**Das Licht war aus.**
The light was off.

Only the most usual meanings of each preposition in English are given next to the German form at the beginning of each entry (e.g. an [on, at]), although in reality they may be rendered in myriad ways in English.

Specific to German prepositions is that they govern a given case, i.e. any noun or pronoun following a preposition must be in the accusative, dative or genitive case, depending on the preposition, but sometimes also depending on the connotation of the preposition concerned as there is a group of very common prepositions that are called two-way prepositions since they can take either the accusative or the dative case. Prepositions are dealt with in the following order: those that take the accusative (12.1), those that take the dative (12.2), those that take either the accusative or the dative (12.3) and those that take the genitive (12.4). 12.5 deals with prepositions that must or can be contracted with a following definite article and 12.6 deals with translating English ‘to’ into German.
There are many verbs in both German and English that take a prepositional object, but the preposition required in German is often different from that used in English, e.g. *sterben an* + dat. (to die of), *warten auf* + acc. (to wait for) (see 10.10).

There are also quite a lot of adjectives in both German and English that take a prepositional object, but the preposition required in German is often different from that used in English, e.g. *reich an* + dat. (rich in), *stolz auf* + acc. (proud of) (see 8.4).

### 12.1 Prepositions that take the accusative case

The following eight prepositions require any noun or pronoun that follows them to be in the accusative case: *für, um, durch, gegen, entlang, bis, ohne, wider*. A mnemonic for remembering them, if you take the first letter of each, is FUDGEHOW.

a) *bis* (until, by, as far as)

   The underlying meaning of this preposition is ‘up to a certain point in time or place’.

   i) The most common meaning of this preposition is ‘until/till’ with reference to time, e.g.

   **Er bleibt bis nächste Woche.**
   He’s staying till next week.

   **Bis morgen.**
   See you tomorrow. (lit. till tomorrow)

   ii) To Germans ‘by’ with reference to time is also rendered by *bis*, as they see this as synonymous with the above, e.g.

   **Ich will das Buch bitte bis nächste Woche zurück haben.**
   I want to have the book back by next week, please.

   **Bis wann muss ich wieder hier sein?**
   By when must I be back here?

   iii) Closely related in meaning for Germans, and thus *bis* is used here too, is ‘as far as’ with reference to place, e.g.

   **Ich fahre nur bis Hannover.**
   I’m only going as far as Hanover.
iv) Idioms like the following incorporating *bis*, where it translates as ‘to’, illustrate its underlying meaning of ‘from A right up to B’, e.g.

**von Kopf bis Fuß**  
from head to toe

**von oben bis unten**  
from top to bottom

v) It is a peculiarity of *bis*, and only of this preposition, that when a determiner stands between it and the following noun, it must be used together with another preposition and that second preposition determines the case of the noun (note that there are no determiners in the above examples). A variety of prepositions are used with *bis* and it is extremely difficult to formulate rules for which one is appropriate for a given context, e.g.

**Es muss bis zum Jahr 2015 eine Lösung gefunden werden.**  
By 2015 a solution has to be found.

**Wir werden bis in das nächste Jahrhundert eine Lösung suchen.**  
We’ll be searching for a solution till next century.

**Das Wasser kam bis an seinen Mund.**  
The water came (up) as far as his mouth.

**Er ging bis an den Zaun und nicht weiter.**  
He walked as far as the fence and no further.

vi) *Bis* is also a subordinating conjunction (see 11.2).

b) *durch* (through, by)

i) The primary meaning of *durch* is ‘through’, e.g.

**Wir sind quer durch die Mitte der Stadt gefahren.**  
We drove straight through the centre of town.

ii) There is a minority of cases where *durch* is better rendered by ‘by’ in English, e.g.

**Ich habe es durch Zufall gehört.**  
I heard it through/by chance.

iii) *Durch* can also render ‘by’ in the passive when the agent of the action is not a person (see *von* for personal agents), e.g.
Die Gaststätte ist durch Feuer zerstört worden.
The restaurant was destroyed by fire.

c) entlang (along)
i) Entlang differs from nearly all other prepositions (but see gegenüber) in that it follows its noun, e.g.

Sie gingen den Fluss entlang.
They walked along the river.

ii) It is possibly somewhat more common, however, to use entlang in combination with an + dat. with exactly the same meaning, e.g.

Sie gingen am Fluss entlang.
They walked along the river.

d) für (for)
i) Für nearly always equates to ‘for’, e.g.

Ich habe ein Geschenk für dich.
I have a gift for you.

Wie viel hast du dafür bezahlt?
How much did you pay for it?

ii) In idioms of the following sort it renders English ‘by’, e.g.

Schritt für Schritt
step by step/little by little

Das ist Wort für Wort, was er gesagt hat.
That is verbatim (lit. word for/by word) what he said.

e) gegen (against)
i) The primary meaning of gegen is ‘against’, e.g.

Stell die Leiter gegen die Wand!
Put the ladder (up) against the wall.

Ich habe nichts gegen ihn.
I have nothing against him.

ii) A common secondary meaning of gegen is ‘approximately/around’ with numerical quantities, e.g.

Er kam so gegen acht Uhr an.
He arrived at about eight o’clock. (lit. getting on towards eight, but no later)
Es tauchten plötzlich gegen fünfzig Kinder auf.
All of a sudden about fifty children turned up.

f) **ohne** (without)
   i) **Ohne** is never followed by an indefinite article (see 5.3.1), e.g.

   **Nur er war ohne Schlips.**
   Only he was without a tie.

   **Er geht nie ohne seinen Hund spazieren.**
   He never goes for a walk without his dog.

   ii) **Ohne** is also used as a conjunction (see 11.3).

g) **um** (around)
   i) The primary meaning of **um** is ‘around’, e.g.

   **Ich bin zweimal um die Welt geflogen.**
   I have flown around the world twice.

   ii) **Um** also renders ‘at’ with the time of day, e.g.

   **Der Film fängt um halb acht an.**
   The film starts at half past seven.

   iii) **Um** is also used as a conjunction (see 11.3).

h) **wider** (against)
   **Wider** is not commonly used in everyday German. It is a formal synonym of **gegen** and is usually found with the meaning ‘against’ in compounds, e.g. **Widerstand** (opposition, i.e. stand against s.t.) and **widersprechen** (to contradict, i.e. to say against), but also occurs as a preposition in some standard expressions, e.g.

   **Wider (alles) Erwarten ist das Wetter auf einmal umgeschlagen.**
   Contrary to/Against (all) expectations the weather suddenly changed.

### 12.2 Prepositions that take the dative case

There is a traditional mnemonic to help remember these prepositions, which is ‘out from midnight, tight by two’, an indirect way of listing **aus, von, mit, nach, seit, bei and zu**. If you find it useful, well and good, but
although it covers all the common dative prepositions, there are two more, außer and gegenüber. Gegenüber is a bit of an odd man out anyway as the description of it below reveals. Even where prepositions like aus, nach, von and zu indicate a motion from or towards a place, they are always followed by the dative, unlike the two-way prepositions (see 12.3).

a) aus (out of, from)
   i) The primary meaning of aus is ‘out of’, e.g.

   **Er rannte aus dem Haus.**
   He ran out of the house.

   ii) It also renders ‘from’ towns and countries when expressing s.o.’s or s.t.’s origins, the answer to **Wo kommen Sie her?** (Where do you come from?), e.g.

   **Ich komme aus Frankreich/Paris.**
   I come from France/Paris.

   **Der Brief kam aus Polen.**
   The letter was from Poland.

   iii) To drink ‘from’ s.t. is also rendered by aus, e.g.

   **Er hat sein Bier aus der Flasche getrunken.**
   He drank his beer from the bottle.

   iv) Less commonly aus renders ‘made of’ with reference to materials, e.g.

   **ein Gürtel aus Leder**
   a belt made of leather

   **Meine Socken sind aus Nylon.**
   My socks are made of nylon.

   v) There is another very idiomatic use of aus where it renders the motivation for doing s.t., e.g.

   **Aus welchem Grund hat er ihr €20 gegeben?**
   For what reason did he give her €20?

   **Er hat es ihr aus Mitleid gegeben.**
   Her gave it to her out of pity.

b) außer (apart from, except for, besides, other than, out of)
i) Depending on context außer can be translated in a variety of ways, e.g.

**Er kennt niemand in dieser Stadt außer mir.**
He doesn’t know anyone in this city apart from/besides/other than me.

ii) There are a few idiomatic contexts where ‘out of’ must be rendered by außer, not aus, e.g.

**Das Telefon an der Ecke ist außer Betrieb.**
The phone on the corner is out of order.

**Sie war außer sich (vor Angst).**
She was beside herself (with fear).

**Ich musste rennen und war deswegen völlig außer Atem.**
I had to run and was thus completely out of breath.

c) bei (at, with)

i) Bei has many idiomatic uses and very seldom means ‘by’. First and foremost it renders ‘at’ s.o.’s place (compare French chez), which is sometimes expressed by ‘with’ in English; German uses bei not mit in such cases, e.g.

**Dieses Jahr feiern wir meinen Geburtstag bei meinen Großeltern.**
This year we are celebrating my birthday at my grandparents’ place.

**Meine Freundin wohnt noch bei ihren Eltern.**
My girlfriend is still living with her parents.

ii) Bei in combination with the definite article is used with professions to render ‘at’ or ‘in’ their places of work, e.g.

**Meine Frau ist beim Arzt.**
My wife is at the doctor’s.

**Ich bin ihr beim Bäcker begegnet.**
I bumped into her at the baker’s/in the bakery.

iii) When you state that you bought s.t. ‘at’ a particular shop or that you work ‘at’ a particular place, i.e. referring to the names of firms, bei is required, e.g.

**Ich habe unseren neuen Fernseher bei Hertie gekauft.**
I bought our new television set at Hertie. (compare Harrods or Macy’s)
Mein Onkel arbeitet bei VW.
My uncle works for VW.

iv) Bei also renders ‘near’ or ‘in the vicinity of’, which is also most commonly expressed quite literally by in der Nähe von, e.g.

Wir wohnen bei Frankfurt/in der Nähe von Frankfurt.
We live near/close to/in the vicinity of Frankfurt.

v) A little known village might be referred to in German as Winkelstadt bei Kassel (i.e. W which is not far from K), which helps the listener to roughly place a village he is not likely otherwise to have heard of.

vi) Bei plus a reflexive pronoun (see 7.3.2) renders ‘on one’s person’, e.g.

Er hatte keinen Pfennig bei sich.
He didn’t have a penny on him.

vii) Beim + an infinitive used as a noun (see 10.7), and thus capitalized, renders ‘while doing’ whatever the infinitive in question is, e.g.

Ich singe sehr gern beim Duschen.
I like to sing while (I’m) showering.

Beim Fahren hat man Zeit über Gott und die Welt nachzudenken.
You have time to think about everything under the sun when you’re driving.

viii) Beim is used with the names of meals to render ‘during/at breakfast/lunch/dinner’ (see zum + meals under zu, point vii), e.g.

Beim Abendessen hat keiner was gesagt.
During dinner no one said anything.

ix) Bei is used very idiomatically with forms of weather, roughly translating ‘when’, e.g.

Bei schönem Wetter gehen wir aus und bei schlechtem (Wetter) bleiben wir zu Hause.
When it’s fine we go out and when the weather is bad we stay at home.

Bei Schnee verbringen die Kinder den ganzen Tag draußen.
When there’s snow/when it’s snowing the kids spend all day outside.
d) gegenüber (opposite, towards)
i) Gegenüber is a preposition with a difference; it follows the noun or pronoun when it refers to a person, but usually precedes it when the noun is non-personal, e.g.

Er saß mir gegenüber.
He sat opposite me.

Er wohnt der alten Dame gegenüber.
He lives opposite the old lady.

Die Bäckerei befindet sich gegenüber dem Postamt.
The bakery is (situated) opposite the post office.

ii) Gegenüber after a noun or pronoun referring to one or more people can render ‘to/toward(s)’ in a figurative sense (i.e. not indicating movement towards), e.g.

Mir gegenüber ist er immer sehr höflich/nett gewesen.
He has always been very polite/nice to me.

e) mit (with)

i) Generally speaking mit corresponds to ‘with’, e.g.

Er ging mit seinem Hund im Park spazieren.
He went for a walk with his dog in the park.

Mit diesem Messer kann man kein Brot schneiden.
You can’t cut bread with this knife.

ii) Mit + the definite article is used to express ‘by’ various modes of transport, e.g.

Sie ist mit der Straßenbahn in die Stadt gefahren.
She went to town by tram.

f) nach (to, after)

i) The most usual meaning of nach is ‘after’, e.g.

Unmittelbar nach dem Konzert ist der Dirigent in Ohnmacht gefallen.
straight after the concert the conductor fainted.

ii) For cases where nach translates ‘to’ see 12.6.

iii) Nach also translates ‘past’ with reference to telling the time, e.g.
Der Zug ist erst um zehn nach sechs angekommen.
The train did not arrive till ten past six.

iv) There is a common idiomatic use of *nach*. In a few standard expressions *nach* means ‘according to’, in which case it usually follows the noun, e.g.

Meiner Meinung nach hat sie nicht alle Tassen im Schrank.
In my opinion she is not alright in the head.

v) The expression *nach Hause* (home, i.e. indicating motion towards) is very common (see *zu Hause* under *zu*, point iv), e.g.

Wann kommst du nach Hause?
When are you coming home?

g) *seit* (since, for)

i) *Seit* translates ‘since’ as a preposition, e.g.

Ich habe sie seit letzter Woche nicht gesehen.
I haven’t seen them since last week.

ii) *Seit* is also used with expressions of time together with the present tense to render ‘for (a particular length of time)’, see 9.4.6 and 10.1.5.3), e.g.

Ich lerne seit zwei Jahren Deutsch.
I have been learning German for two years.

iii) ‘Since’ in English is also a conjunction (see 11.2) and an adverb (see 9.4.7, General expressions of time), in which instances it is rendered by other words in German, i.e. *seit/seitdem* and *seitdem/seither* respectively.

h) *von* (from, off, of)

i) The most usual meaning of *von* is ‘from’ (see *aus*), e.g.

Wie weit ist es von München nach Nürnberg?
How far is it from Munich to Nuremberg?

ii) The distinction we make in English between ‘from’ and ‘off’ is not made in German; both meanings are rendered by *von*, e.g.

Er ist vom Dach gefallen.
He fell off/from the roof.

iii) When ‘of’ is not possessive *von* is required, e.g.
Das ist sehr lieb von dir.  
That is very sweet of you.

iv) Where the genitive is not used to render possessive ‘of’, von is used, often being an alternative in colloquial German to the genitive (see 4.4), e.g.

die Hauptstadt von Deutschland (= die Hauptstadt Deutschlands)  
the capital city of Germany

der Schwager von meinem Bruder (= der Schwager meines Bruders)  
my brother’s brother-in-law

v) Von also renders ‘by’ in the passive (see 10.4.1), e.g.

Dieser Brief ist deutlich von einem Deutschen geschrieben worden.  
This letter was clearly written by a German.

i) zu (to)

i) The primary meaning of zu is ‘to’ (a place); see 12.6.
Compare Gib mir deine Hand! (Give me your hand.), which is a typical case of the dative expressing ‘to’, with Komm zu mir! (Come to me.) which involves physical movement.

ii) Good/nice ‘to’ s.o. is rendered by zu, e.g.

Er war sehr gut/nett zu mir.  
He was very good/nice to me.

iii) Zu is usually not an option where a dative renders ‘to’ a person except after the verb sagen, where it used when sagen means ‘to say s.t. to s.o.’ as opposed to ‘to tell s.o. s.t.’, e.g.

Was hat er zu dir gesagt?  
What did he say to you?

Was hat er dir gesagt?  
What did he tell you?

iv) The very common expression zu Hause means ‘at home’. Compare nach Hause (home) under nach, point v.

v) Zu renders ‘at’ with reference to religious festivities, e.g.
zu Ostern/Pfingsten/Weihnachten
at Easter/Whitsuntide/Christmas

vi) Zu occurs in many idiomatic phrases where it is rendered by various English prepositions, e.g.

zu Fuß
on foot

du zweit/dritt/viert
in twos/threes/fours

zum Schluss
at the end (= finally)

zum ersten/zweiten/letzten Mal
for the first/second/last time

zum Beispiel
for example

Ich habe eine digitale Kamera zum Geburtstag bekommen.
I got a digital camera for my birthday.

vii) Zu + the definite article is used with meals to render ‘for’ breakfast/lunch/dinner (compare bei with meals, point viii), e.g.

Was esst ihr normalerweise zum Frühstück?
What do you (guys) normally have for breakfast?

Compare zu without the definite article with reference to meals, which has quite a different meaning, e.g.

Wo habt ihr zu Mittag/Abend gegessen?
Where did you have lunch/dinner?

viii) Zu is also used as an adverb meaning ‘closed’ of doors, windows and shops, e.g.

Die Tür/Aldi war zu.
The door/Aldi was shut. (Aldi is a German supermarket chain.)

j) ab (from)
The most usual function of ab is as a prepositional verbal prefix (see 10.9.1.a), but it also has a limited function as an independent preposition meaning ‘from’ in expressions of time, where it is synonymous with von ... an, e.g.

Ab zehn Uhr bin ich wieder im Büro. (= von zehn Uhr an)
From ten o’clock (on) I’ll be back in my office.
12.3 Prepositions that take both the accusative and the dative case, i.e. two-way prepositions

These prepositions take either the accusative or the dative case depending on whether motion towards (acc.) or place (dat.) is being indicated: hinter, an, auf, unter, über, zwischen, vor, in, neben. Try HAAUZVIN (think of ‘housewine’) as a mnemonic; it’s not perfect but better than nothing.

With these prepositions you will often be faced with the dilemma of not being able to decide whether a given context indicates motion or place, as it would not seem to be either; in such cases you simply have to learn which case is appropriate to the context, e.g.

**Sie ist über neunzig Jahre alt.**
She is over ninety years old.

This example is in the acc., as indicated by the lack of a dat. plural -n on **Jahre**.

a) an (on, at)
   i) This preposition is often confused by English speakers with **auf**.
   First and foremost vertical ‘on’ is rendered by an (but a horizontal ‘on’ is rendered by **auf**), e.g.
   
   **Der Lehrer hat die Weltkarte an die Wand gehängt.** (accusative)
   The teacher hung the map of the world on the wall.

   **Er klopfte ans Fenster.** (accusative)
   He knocked on the window.

   **Die Karte hängt an der Wand.** (dative)
   The map is hanging on the wall.

   ii) ‘On’ or ‘at’ the edge of things is also **an**, e.g.

   **an der Grenze** on the border (dative)

   **an der Küste** on the coast (dative)

   **am Rand des Waldes** on the edge of the forest

   iii) ‘On’ in expressions of time is rendered by **an** + dative, e.g.

   **an meinem Geburtstag** on my birthday

   **am Montag** on Monday

   **am nächsten Tag** the next day
b) auf (on)
When s.t. is (placed) ‘on’ a horizontal surface, ‘on’ is rendered by auf, e.g.

_Ich habe die Zeitung auf den Tisch gelegt._ (accusative)
I put the newspaper on the table.

_Die Zeitung liegt auf dem Tisch._ (dative)
The newspaper is lying on the table.

c) hinter (behind)
Hinter corresponds almost exactly to ‘behind’, e.g.

_Der Dackel lief hinter einen Baum._ (accusative)
The sausage dog ran behind a tree.

_Er hat den Dackel hinter einem Baum gefunden._ (dative)
He found the sausage dog behind a tree.

d) in (in, into)
In this case we make a distinction between motion and place in English too, but where German does this with case, we do it with ‘into’ and ‘in’ respectively, e.g.

_Sie ging ins Badezimmer._ (accusative)
She went into the bathroom.

_Sie ist im Badezimmer._ (dative)
She is in the bathroom.

e) neben (next to, beside, alongside)
Neben corresponds almost exactly to ‘next to’, e.g.

_Er setzte sich neben mich._ (accusative)
He sat down next to me.

_Er saß neben mir._ (dative)
He was sitting next to/alongside me.

f) über (above, over, across)
i) The primary meaning of über is ‘over’, but more or less the same meaning is expressed in certain contexts in English by ‘above’ and ‘across’ – German makes do with the one word here, e.g.

_Der Bus ist über die Brücke gefahren._ (accusative)
The bus drove over/across the bridge.
Sie haben einen Spiegel über ihrem Bett. (dative)
They have a mirror over/above their bed.

ii) ‘Over’ meaning ‘more than’ with reference to quantities is also
rendered by über (+ acc.), e.g.

Als er verhaftet wurde, hatte er über fünftausend Euro bei sich.
When he was arrested he had over five thousand euros on him.

iii) Über (+ acc.) also translates ‘via’ with reference to places, e.g.

Wir sind über Innsbruck/den Brenner von Italien zurückgefahren.
We drove back from Italy via Innsbruck/the Brenner Pass.

g) unter (under)

i) Generally speaking unter corresponds quite closely to ‘under’, e.g.

Die Katze ist unter das Bett gelaufen. (accusative)
The cat ran under the bed.

Ich habe meine Brille endlich unter dem Bett gefunden. (dative)
I finally found my glasses under the bed.

ii) Unter (+ dat.) also translates ‘beneath’, as this is more or less
synonymous with ‘under’ even if ‘under’ cannot be used in all contexts
in English, e.g.

unter der See
beneath/under the sea

Das war bestimmt unter ihrer Würde.
That was definitely beneath her (dignity).

iii) ‘Among’ is also rendered by unter (+ dat.), e.g.

Sie sind hier unter Freunden.
You are among friends here.

h) vor (in front of, before)

i) Vor can refer to the physical position of s.t., in which case it
translates ‘in front of’, e.g.

Er hat sein Auto vor die Garage gefahren.
He drove his car in front of the garage. (accusative, i.e. where he drove
it to)
Die Kinder haben anderthalb Stunden vor dem Supermarkt gewartet.
The children waited in front of the supermarket for an hour and a half.

ii) Vor can just as commonly refer to time, in which case it translates ‘before’ and always takes the dative, e.g.

Wir haben vor dem Konzert ein Glas Wein in einer Wirtschaft getrunken.
We had a glass of wine in a pub before the concert.

iii) Vor is used to translate ‘to’ when telling the time (see nach, point iii), e.g.

Es ist Viertel vor sechs.
It is a quarter to six.

i) zwischen (between)

Zwischen corresponds more or less exactly to ‘between’, e.g.

Er setze sich zwischen mich und meine Frau.
He sat down between me and my wife.

Er saß zwischen mir und meiner Frau.
He was sitting between me and my wife.

12.4 Prepositions that take the genitive case

There are only six prepositions that take the genitive case: anstatt, außerhalb, innerhalb, trotz, während, wegen. The genitive case has been losing functions over a long period of time in German. This process of erosion is evidenced by the fact that many Germans these days commonly use the dative after wegen in speech, and even after während, but you are advised to adhere to the genitive. The English equivalents of all but one of these prepositions contain ‘of’, which is an indicator of their taking the genitive case; even während can be seen as meaning ‘during the course of’.

a) (an)statt (instead of)

i) The an- prefix is optional, but inclusion of the prefix is more formal, e.g.

Er hat seine neuen Sandalen getragen statt seiner alten Schuhe.
He wore his new sandals instead of his old shoes.
ii) When a masculine or neuter noun immediately follows statt, i.e. with no determiner between them, a genitive is not applied to the noun, as might otherwise be expected, e.g.

Wir haben alle Tee statt Kaffee getrunken.
We all drank tea instead of coffee.

iii) Note the adverb stattdessen (instead of that, instead), e.g.

Was hast du denn stattdessen gemacht?
Then what did you do instead (of that)?

iv) (An)statt is also a conjunction (see 11.2 and 11.3).

b) außerhalb (outside [of])
This preposition differs in meaning from the adverb draußen (outside), e.g.

Er wohnt heutzutage außerhalb der Stadt.
These days he lives outside (of) town.

c) innerhalb (inside [of], within)

i) This preposition differs in meaning from the adverb drinnen (inside). It can be used with reference to place, in which case it is the opposite of außerhalb, e.g.

Alle entkommenen Tiger sind zum Glück innerhalb des Tiergartens geblieben.
All escaped tigers fortunately stayed within/inside the zoo.

ii) Innerhalb is more usually used to render ‘within’ in a temporal sense, in which case von + dat. commonly replaces the genitive, e.g.

Wenn du nicht innerhalb eines Monats/von einem Monat zahlst, gibt es Krach.
If you don’t pay up within a month, there’ll be trouble.

d) trotz (in spite of, despite)

i) Trotz corresponds exactly to ‘in spite of’ and its synonym ‘despite’, e.g.

Die Party wurde trotz des schlechten Wetters draußen im Garten gehalten.
The party was held outside in the garden despite the bad weather.
ii) The adverbial expressions **trotz allem** (in spite of everything) and **trotzdem** (nevertheless) betray the historical tendency of this preposition to take the dative.

c) **während** (during)
   i) **Während** as a preposition corresponds exactly to ‘during’, e.g.

   **Während des Krieges hat die Familie in Bosnien gewohnt.**
   The family lived in Bosnia during the war.

   ii) **Während** is also a subordinating conjunction meaning ‘while’ (see 11.2).

f) **wegen** (because of, on account of, due to)
   i) This preposition is very commonly followed by the dative in spoken German, although when followed by a feminine noun, there is no difference anyway, e.g.

   **Wegen des Wetters/wegen dem Wetter sind wir zu Hause geblieben.**
   We stayed at home because of/due to the weather.

   **Irmgard konnte wegen ihrer Mutter nicht mitkommen.**
   Irmgard was not able to come along because of/on account of her mother.

   If a personal pronoun follows **während**, you have no choice but to use a dative form, e.g.

   **Irmgard konnte wegen mir nicht mitgehen.**
   Irmgard was not able to go along because of me/on account of me.

   ii) When this preposition is used in combination with a personal pronoun, rather than a noun, special forms are used which can also translate differently into English, e.g.

   **meinetwegen** because of me, for my sake, on my account
   **deinetwegen** because of you, for your sake, on your account
   **seinetwegen** because of him, for his sake, on his account
   **ihretwegen** because of her, for her sake, on her account
   **unseretwegen** because of us, for our sake, on our account
   **euretwegen** because of you, for your sake, on your account
Ihretwegen meaning because of you, for your sake, on your account
ihretwegen meaning because of them, for their sake, on their account

iii) The adverbs weswegen (why), a synonym of warum, and deswegen (therefore, i.e. because of that) are derived from wegen. Weshalb and deshalb are synonymous with weswegen and deswegen.

### 12.5 Contraction of prepositions with the definite article

In both spoken and written German it is usual to contract certain prepositions with the following definite article. Some of these contractions are mandatory whereas others are merely possible, but not necessarily applied. The following contractions should always be applied in the dative to masculine and neuter nouns:

- an dem > am, bei dem > beim, in dem > im, von dem > vom,
- zu dem > zum

e.g.

> am Bahnhof (at the station), beim Abendessen (during dinner), im Wasser (in the water)

There is only one feminine contraction, namely zu der > zur, e.g.

> Ich gehe jetzt zur Post.
I’m going to the post office now.

The accusative neuter forms an das > an und in das > ins are also mandatory, e.g.

> Wir gehen heute Abend ins Theater.
We’re going to a play tonight.

All the following accusative contractions are optional in the spoken language but are rarely written:

- auf das > aufs, durch das > durchs, für das > fürs, hinter das > hinter, über das > übers, unter das > unters, vor das > vors, um das > ums

e.g.

> Er ist aufs Dach geklettert.
He climbed onto the roof.
The dative forms unter dem > unterm and vor dem > vorm also occur in speech, but seldom in writing.

Other forms like auf dem > auf’m and nach dem > nach’m are considered even more colloquial but are nevertheless extremely commonly used in natural speech.

Whenever forms of der/die/das are emphasized, as in cases where they mean ‘that/those’ (see 5.2), such contractions cannot be used, e.g.

\[ \text{Sie haben früher in dem Haus gewohnt.} \]
They used to live in that house.

12.6 How to translate ‘to’ into German

Although it would be an endless task to attempt to explain how every English preposition is rendered in German, there are a few hard and fast rules that apply to ‘to’ which are worth heeding as this is such a common preposition in English and is translated into German in several different ways.

a) ‘To’ a town or country is always rendered by nach, which always requires the dative despite indicating motion towards a place, e.g.

\[ \text{Wir fahren morgen in Urlaub nach Italien/Rom.} \]
We’re going on holiday to Italy/Rome tomorrow.

Only those countries that are preceded by the definite article require in + acc., not nach, to render ‘to’ before them, e.g.

\[ \text{Wir fliegen morgen in die Türkei/Vereinigten Staaten.} \]
We’re flying to Turkey/the USA tomorrow.

b) As a general rule in + acc. is the most common way of rendering ‘to’ a place if that place is preceded by a definite article, as is the case for example with shops, e.g.

\[ \text{Sie ist in die Konditorei/Apotheke gegangen.} \]
She went to the cake shop/chemist’s.

In + acc. is also the most usual form for going ‘to’ town, church and school, e.g.

\[ \text{Sie geht um acht Uhr in die Stadt/Kirche/Schule.} \]
She’s going to town/church/school at eight o’clock.
Such forms contrast nicely with in + dat. rendering position at such places, not motion towards them, e.g.

Ich habe sie in der Konditorei/Apotheke/Stadt/Kirche/Schule getroffen.
I met her in the cake shop/chemist’s/town/church/school.

c) It is usually also possible to use zu + dat. in cases like those immediately above to render ‘to’, e.g.

Sie ist zur Konditorei/Apotheke/Stadt/Kirche/Schule gegangen.
With public buildings the form with zu is preferable (but see d), e.g.

Sie ist zum Bahnhof/Postamt gegangen.
She went to the station/post office.

d) A little less commonly you will find auf + acc. being used to translate ‘to’ public buildings, e.g.

Sie ging auf den Markt/die Post/die Bank.
She went to the market/post office/bank.

This has a parallel in the dative rendering ‘at’, as was the case with in above, e.g.

Ich bin ihr auf dem Markt/der Post/der Bank begegnet.
I bumped into her at the market/post office/bank.

e) Zu must be used when going ‘to’ s.o.’s place, e.g.

Wir gingen nach dem Abendessen zu meinen Großeltern/zu Oma.
We went to my grandparents’/granny’s (place) after dinner.

f) The dative case on its own can also render ‘to’, which is, for example, always the case after geben (to give), e.g.

Er hat seiner Mutter sein ganzes Gehalt gegeben.
He gave his whole salary to his mother.

With verbs like ‘to write to’ and ‘to send to’ you have the choice of either using the dative alone or an + acc., e.g.

Er hat seiner Mutter einen Brief geschrieben/geschickt.
He wrote/sent his mother a letter.
Er hat einen Brief an seine Mutter geschrieben/geschickt.
He wrote/sent a letter to his mother.

Word order changes in both languages depending on which construction you use.

g) For figurative ‘to’ as in ‘polite to someone’, see definition two of gegenüber and zu under 12.2.
13.1 Cardinal numerals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Even Numbers</th>
<th>Odd Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 null</td>
<td>15 fünfzehn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 eins¹</td>
<td>16 sechzehn³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 zwei²</td>
<td>17 siebzehn⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 drei</td>
<td>18 achtzehn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 vier</td>
<td>19 neunzehn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 fünf</td>
<td>20 zwanzig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 sechs³</td>
<td>21 einundzwanzig¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 sieben</td>
<td>22 zweiundzwanzig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 acht</td>
<td>23 dreundzwanzig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 neun</td>
<td>24 vierundzwanzig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 zehn</td>
<td>25 fünfundzwanzig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 elf</td>
<td>26 sechsundzwanzig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 zwölf</td>
<td>27 siebenundzwanzig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 dreizehn</td>
<td>28 achtundzwanzig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 vierzehn</td>
<td>29 neunundzwanzig</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compound numerals, if ever written out in full, are written as one word, as illustrated below.
30 d雷bzig\(^5\) & 266 & zweihundertsechsundsechzig \\
40 vierzig & 1,000 & tausend\(^6\) \\
50 f雷nfzig & 1,008 & tausendacht \\
60 sechzig\(^3\) & 5,010 & fünftausendzehn \\
70 siebzig\(^4\) & 6,788 & sechstausendsiebenhundertachtundachtzig \\
80 achtzig & 200,000 & zweihunderttausend \\
90 neunzig & 1,000,000 & eine Million \\
100 hundert\(^6\) & 2,000,000 & zwei Millionen \\
101 hunderteins\(^7\) & one billion & eine Milliarde (i.e. 1,000 million) \\
153 hundertdreund- & one trillion & eine Billion (a million million) \\

Notes:

1 The raw numeral is eins but when followed by a noun, ‘one’ is identical in form to the indefinite article ‘a/an’ (see 5.3). When ein means ‘one’ it is emphasized in speech, e.g.

Er hat nur ein Kind.
He has only one child.

In compound numerals like einundzwanzig etc. the s is dropped.

Eins is the only numeral to be inflected for case and gender, in which case its inflections are the same as those for the indefinite article, e.g.

Er hat nur einen Sohn.
He has only one son.

2 Colloquially zwei is commonly pronounced zwo, particularly when spelling out numbers (e.g. when on the phone), e.g.

Meine Postleitzahl ist vier zwo drei zwo.
My post code is 4232.

This form also applies to the ordinal number, i.e. der/die/das zwote (the second) (see 13.2).

3 The s of sechs is dropped in sechzehn and sechzig, which also changes the pronunciation of the ch, i.e. sechs is pronounced ‘zek’s’ but the ch in sech- in the other two numerals is an ich-Laut (see 1.3).
4 Note that although ‘seven’ is sieben, the -en is dropped in siebzehn and siebzig as well as in siebte (seventh) (see 13.2).

5 Only dreißig ends in -ßig rather than -zig.

6 Hundert and tausend on their own render ‘a hundred’ and ‘a thousand’, whereas einhundert and eintausend mean ‘one hundred’ and ‘one thousand’.

‘Hundreds/thousands of’ is expressed as follows:

hunderte/tausende Mäuse or hunderte/tausende von Mäusen
hundreds/thousands of mice

7 With numerals after 101 German omits ‘and’ between the hundreds and the tens, just as is done in American English, e.g. zweihundertvierundsechzig (two hundred [and] sixty-four).

13.1.1 Use of commas and full-stops/periods with numerals

The Germans use a full-stop when writing thousands, not a comma, but a comma may be used where we use a full-stop, i.e. instead of a decimal point: 10,000 and 28,000,00 (English 10,000 and 28,000.00) Thus a price is written like this €25,95 (pron. fünfundzwanzig Euro fünfundneunzig) and a temperature like this 16,8º (pron. sechzehn Komma acht Grad, i.e. sixteen point eight degrees).

13.2 Ordinal numerals

The following are adjectives and are given here in the nom. m. form as found after ein/eine/ein.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st</th>
<th>erster</th>
<th>10th</th>
<th>zehnter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>zweiter</td>
<td>11th</td>
<td>elfter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>dritter</td>
<td>12th</td>
<td>zwölfter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>vierter</td>
<td>13th</td>
<td>dreizehnter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th</td>
<td>fünfter</td>
<td>14th</td>
<td>vierzehnter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6th</td>
<td>sechster</td>
<td>15th</td>
<td>fünfzehnter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th</td>
<td>siebter</td>
<td>16th</td>
<td>sechzehnter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8th</td>
<td>achter</td>
<td>17th</td>
<td>siebzehnter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9th</td>
<td>neunter</td>
<td>18th</td>
<td>achtzehnter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.2.1 The German equivalent of the abbreviations ‘st’, ‘nd’, ‘rd’ and ‘th’

The English abbreviations ‘st’, ‘nd’, ‘rd’ and ‘th’ are all rendered in German by merely placing a full-stop after the numeral, e.g.

Ich bin am 25. August geboren.
I was born on the 25th of August.
13.3 Fractions

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{1}{4} & \quad \text{ein Viertel (n.)} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \quad \text{die Hälfte, ein halber}^1 \\
1\frac{1}{2} & \quad \text{anderthalb, eineinhalb}^1 \\
2\frac{1}{2}, 3\frac{1}{2} \text{ etc.} & \quad \text{zweieinhalb, dreieinhalb etc.} \\
\frac{1}{8} & \quad \text{ein Achtel (n.)} \\
\frac{2}{3} & \quad \text{zwei Drittel (n.)} \\
\frac{3}{8} & \quad \text{drei Achtel (n.)} \\
\frac{1}{16} & \quad \text{ein Sechzehntel (n.)} \\
0.5\% \text{ (point five per cent)} & \quad \text{null Komma fünf Prozent} \\
1.8\% \text{ (one point eight per cent)} & \quad \text{eins Komma acht Prozent}
\end{align*}
\]

Notes:

1 The English word ‘half’ causes difficulties because the noun and the adjective in German are different words, unlike English, i.e. die Hälfte, halb. The way the two are used is best illustrated by examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{die Hälfte der Leute} & \quad \text{half the people} \\
\text{die halbe Flasche} & \quad \text{half the bottle}
\end{align*}
\]

Sie hat die Hälfte der Torte aufgegessen.
Sie hat die halbe Torte aufgegessen.
She ate half the cake.

Ich habe die Hälfte des Buches schon gelesen.
Ich habe das halbe Buch schon gelesen.
I have already read half the book.

Ich habe es für die Hälfte des Preises gekauft.
Ich habe es zum halben Preis gekauft.
I bought it for half the price.

‘One and a half’ is expressed by either anderthalb or eineinhalb, which do not inflect, e.g.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{anderthalb/eineinhalb} & \quad \text{one and a half hours} \\
\text{Stunden} & \\
\text{anderthalb/eineinhalb Meter} & \quad \text{one and a half metres}
\end{align*}
\]

Similarly with zweieinhalb, dreieinhalb, viereinhalb etc.
13.4 Arithmetic/calculation

Acht plus acht ist sechzehn.
Eight plus eight is/equal sixteen.

Vier mal vier ist sechzehn.
Four times four is sixteen.

Acht multipliziert mit zwei ist sechzehn.
Four multiplied by four is sixteen.

Sechzehn dividiert/geteil durch vier ist vier.
Sixteen divided by four is four.

13.5 Age

Wie alt bist du/sind Sie?
How old are you?

Er ist erst zehn (Jahre alt).
He is only ten (years old).

Wann bist du/sind Sie geboren?
When were you born?

Ich bin am dritten (März) geboren.
I was born on the third (of March).

Ich bin am dritten dritten geboren.
I was born on the third of March.

Ich bin (im Jahre) 1978 geboren.
I was born in 1978.

Ich habe heute Geburtstag.
It is my birthday today.

im Alter von vierzehn Jahren
at the age of fourteen

Mit vierzehn Jahren war er …
At the age of fourteen he was …

Er ist in den Sechzigern.
He is in his sixties.

Er ist Anfang/Mitte/Ende sechzig.
He is in his early/mid/late sixties.

Er ist unter/über sechzig.
He is under/over sixty.

der Einunddreißigjährige etc.
the thirty-one-year-old etc.

eine Dame in den mittleren Jahren
a middle-aged lady

eine Dame mittleren Alters
a middle-aged lady
Note:

1 Note that if im Jahre is omitted no in is used before a year. In addition, years are always read as follows, not omitting the word for hundred as is usually done in English:

\[ \text{neunzehnhundertachtundsiebzig} \]

nineteen (hundred and) seventy-eight

## 13.6 Money

Currency units, like all forms of measurement (e.g. Gramm, Millimeter, Meter, Kilometer, Kilo), are left in the singular after a numeral, e.g. zehn Mark, zwanzig Euro, sieben (Schweizer) Franken, fünfzehn Dollar, sechs Rubel, fünf Cent. Only Krone (crown), ending in -e as it does, takes a plural -n after a numeral, e.g. zehn Kronen.

Euro is masculine, which is relevant for employing the correct case in contexts such as the following:

**Ein Eis kostet einen Euro.**

An ice-cream costs a/one euro.

**Ich habe einen Euro dafür bezahlt.**

I paid a/one euro for it.

For this reason you need to know the gender of all currency units, i.e. der Cent, der Franken (Swiss), die Krone, das Pfund, der Rappen (Swiss centime), der Rubel. Der Groschen, die Mark, der Pfennig and der Schilling are now all of course obsolete but are still found in many pre-2003 texts.

Prices in Germany are written and expressed as follows:

\[ \text{€54,60 (pron. vierundfünfzig Euro sechzig)} \]

\[ \text{€1,20 (pron. eins zwanzig or ein Euro zwanzig)} \]

## 13.7 Telling the time

**Wie viel Uhr ist es?**  
What is the time?

**Wie spät ist es?**  
It is one/two/three o’clock.

**Es ist ein’/zwei/drei Uhr.**  
It is five past one.

**Es ist Viertel nach eins.**  
It is a quarter past one.

**Es ist zwanzig nach eins.**  
It is twenty past one.
Es ist zehn vor halb zwei. It is twenty past one.
Es ist fünfundzwanzig nach eins. It is twenty-five past one.
Es ist fünf vor halb zwei. It is twenty-five past one.
Es ist halb zwei. It is half past one.
Es ist fünfundzwanzig vor zwei. It is twenty-five to two.
Es ist fünf nach halb zwei. It is twenty-five to two.
Es ist zwanzig vor zwei. It is twenty to two.
Es ist zehn nach halb zwei. It is twenty to two.
Es ist Viertel vor zwei. It is a quarter to two.
Es ist zehn vor zwei. It is ten to two.

Note:
1 Note the alternation of ein and eins.

The 24-hour clock is popular in Germany. It is always used in official contexts but is not uncommon in informal conversation either, e.g.

**Der nächste Zug nach Wien fährt um einundzwanzig Uhr dreißig von Gleis 5 ab.**
The next train to Vienna leaves from platform 5 at 9.30 pm.

When not using the 24-hour clock ‘am’ and ‘pm’ are expressed as follows if necessary:

**um zehn Uhr morgens/vormittags**
at ten o’clock in the morning/10.00 am

**um vier Uhr nachmittags**
at four in the afternoon/4.00 pm

**um sechs Uhr abends**
at six o’clock in the evening/6.00 pm

**um ein Uhr nachts/in der Nacht**
at one o’clock in the morning/1.00 am

**13.7.1 Expressions of time with reference to the clock**

**um acht (Uhr)**
at eight o’clock
um acht Uhr genau \hspace{48pt} \textit{at exactly eight o’clock}
pünktlich um acht Uhr \hspace{48pt} \textit{at exactly eight o’clock}
Punkt acht Uhr \hspace{48pt} \textit{at eight o’clock on the dot}
ungefähr um acht Uhr \hspace{48pt} \textit{at about eight}
gegen acht (Uhr) \hspace{48pt} \textit{at about eight (but no later)}
kurz nach acht (Uhr) \hspace{48pt} \textit{shortly after eight}

Although Viertel renders ‘a quarter’ in telling the time, ‘a quarter of an hour’ is eine Viertelstunde and ‘three quarters of an hour’ is eine Dreiviertelstunde, e.g.

\textbf{Ich habe eine Dreiviertelstunde auf sie gewartet.}
\textit{I waited for her for three quarters of an hour.}

### 13.8 Dates

#### Days of the week (see 9.4.7)

- Sonntag (So.)
- Montag (Mo.)
- Dienstag (Di.)
- Mittwoch (Mi.)

- Donnerstag (Do.)
- Freitag (Fr.)
- Samstag/Sonnabend (Sa.)

\textit{Sonnabend} is typically North German but \textit{Samstag}, although originally southern German, is quite widely used.

#### Months of the year

- Januar (Jan.)
- Februar (Feb.)
- März (März)
- April (Apr.)
- Mai (Mai)
- Juni (Jun.)

- Juli (Jul.)
- August (Aug.)
- September (Sept.)
- Oktober (Okt.)
- November (Nov.)
- Dezember (Dez.)

Some German speakers feel that \textit{Juni} and \textit{Juli} sound very similar and to avoid ambiguity in deliberate speech they are pronounced \textit{Juno} and \textit{Julei} (stress on second syllable).

When reading out years in dates, German never omits the word ‘hundred’ as is usually the case in English, e.g.
Er ist im Jahr(e) neunzehnhundertachtundvierzig geboren.
He was born in nineteen (hundred and) forty-eight.

Asking the date in German can be expressed in two ways, i.e.

**Der wievielte ist heute?** or **Den wievielten haben wir heute?**
What is the date today?

Likewise the answer can be expressed in two ways, i.e.

**Heute ist der dritte (Mai).** or **Heute haben wir den dritten Mai.**
Today is the third (of May).

Dates are otherwise expressed as in English but omit ‘of’ before the month, e.g.

**Er kommt am neunzehnten (August) zurück.**
He’s returning on the nineteenth (of August)/on August nineteenth.

Dates at the top of letters are expressed in the accusative and are written as follows:

**den 18. September 2006**

If abbreviated to pure numerals, dates follow the British, not the American, system of day-month-year, e.g. **12.11.2005** (i.e. 12th of November).

Dates are commonly abbreviated in speech as follows:

**Er bleibt bis zum neunten elften auf Rhodos.**
He’s staying in Rhodes till the ninth of November.

### 13.9 Weights

Germans express weight in grams (das Gramm) and kilos (das Kilo), which, like all other such measures, are left in the singular after a numeral, e.g.

**Siebenhundertfünfzig Gramm Gehacktes, bitte.**
750 grams of mince, please.

**Ich wiege fünfundachtzig Kilo.**
I weigh 85 kilo(gram)s.

**Ich habe in drei Wochen fünf Kilo zugenommen/abgenommen.**
I have put on/lost five kilos in three weeks.

Remember that an imperial pound is 454 grams. German does use the
word Pfund (i.e. 500 grams) as a measure of weight, but not with reference to personal weight, only foodstuffs, e.g.

**ein halbes Pfund/250 Gramm Schabefleisch**
half a pound/250 grams of minced meat (a speciality eaten raw)

### 13.10 Measurement

#### 13.10.1 Height, length

**die Größe**
height (of people), size (of objects, clothing)

**Wie groß bist du?**
How tall are you?

**Ich bin 1,72 groß.**
I am one metre seventy-two centimetres tall.

(pron. **ein Meter zweiundsiebzig**)

The height of a tree, building etc. is **die Höhe**, e.g.

**Wie hoch ist dieser Baum?**
How tall is this tree?

Length up to one metre is expressed in millimetres (**Millimeter**) and centimetres (**Zentimeter**).

**die Breite**
width

**die Größe**
size (i.e. both largeness and clothing size)

**Welche Größe tragen/haben Sie?**
What size do you take?

**Ich trage/habe Größe 42.**
I take a size 42. (in shoes)

#### 13.10.2 Square and cubic measurements

**fünf mal fünf (Meter)**
five by five (metres)

**drei Quadratmeter**
three square metres

**sechs Kubikmeter**
six cubic metres
13.10.3 Distance and petrol/gas consumption

Distances are measured in kilometres in all German-speaking countries and the word Kilometer, like Zentimeter and Meter, is never used in the plural after numerals, although in this case the singular of all three words happens to be the same as the plural in German, e.g.

Wir sind heute 200 Kilometer gefahren.
We drove 200 kilometres today.

Meile (mile) can be used when talking of distances in English-speaking countries, e.g. zehn Meilen (ten miles). Being a feminine noun ending in -e, Meile is pluralized after numerals.

Petrol consumption of a car is rendered as follows:

Wie viel verbraucht Ihr Auto?
How many miles per gallon does your car do? (lit. use)

Mein Auto verbraucht fünf Liter pro/auf 100 Kilometer.
(i.e. five litres for every 100 kilometres driven)
My car does twenty kilometres to the litre.

Speed is expressed as follows:

Er ist mit achtzig um die Ecke gerast.
He drove around the corner at 80 kilometres an hour.

13.11 School marks/grades

A school or university ‘mark/grade’ is a Note (f.). At German schools, marks or grades are given out of six where eine Eins (pl. zwei Einsen) is the best score and eine Sechs the worst, e.g.

Ich habe eine zwei in Mathe bekommen.
I got a 2 for maths.

Eine Fünf and eine Sechs are both fails. Synonymous with the six grades are the following:

1 – ausgezeichnet/sehr gut excellent/very good
2 – gut good
3 – befriedigend fair
4 – genügend/ausreichend  satisfactory
5 – mangelhaft  poor
6 – ungenügend  unsatisfactory

Ich habe mangelhaft in Chemie bekommen.
I got a 5 for chemistry./I failed chemistry.

Passing and failing subjects can also be expressed verbally, e.g.

durchfallen (to fail)
Ich bin (in Mathe) durchgefallen.
I failed (maths).

bestehen, durchkommen (to pass)
The former is transitive and the latter intransitive, e.g.

Ich habe Mathe bestanden. (subject must be mentioned)
I passed maths.

Ich bin (in Mathe) durchgekommen. (subject can be omitted)
I passed (maths).
Chapter 14

Negation

14.1 Position of nicht (not) and nie(mals) (never)

One of the trickiest aspects of negating a sentence in German is deciding just where to place the negative particle.

14.1.1 The negative follows:

a) adverbs of specific time, e.g.

Ich komme heute nicht mit.
I’m not coming with you today.

Wir wollen es diese Woche nicht machen.
We don’t want to do it this week.

However, nicht always precedes general adverbs of time like immer (always), oft (often) and selten (seldom), e.g.

Er ist nicht immer so faul gewesen.
He has not always been so lazy.

b) definite direct objects

The negative follows the direct object as long as that object is preceded by a definite determiner, i.e. der/die/das, dieser, a possessive adjective or is a personal pronoun, e.g.

Ich habe das/dieses/sein Buch nicht finden können. (definite)
I have not been able to find the/this, that/his book.

Er hat sie nicht getroffen. (definite pronominal object)
He didn’t meet her.

Kennst du ihn nicht? (definite pronominal object)
Don’t you know him?
Compare the following where the direct objects are indefinite:

Er hat nie ein Buch gelesen.
He has never read a book.

Ich habe nie eine wirklich gute Schere kaufen können.
I have never been able to buy a really good pair of scissors.

14.1.2 The negative precedes:

a) indefinite direct objects
The negative precedes a direct object as long as it is indefinite, i.e. a noun preceded by ein or viel(e) or is an indefinite pronoun like etwas, jemand, niemand etc., e.g.

Er hat nie ein Auto gehabt.
He’s never had a car.

Wir werden nicht viel/viele Sachen mit dem Geld kaufen können.
We won’t be able to buy much/many things with the money.

For nicht in combination with ein see 14.2.a.

b) adverbial expressions of manner, e.g.

Ich fahre nicht mit dem Zug, (sondern mit dem Auto).
I’m not going by train (but by car).

Sie will nicht alleine zum Arzt gehen.
She does not want to go to the doctor on her own.

c) adverbial expressions of place, e.g.

Ich wohne nicht im achten Stock.
I don’t live on the eighth floor.

Sie ist nie in England gewesen.
She has never been to England.

Er hat nicht im Garten gearbeitet.
He hasn’t been working in the garden.

d) prepositional objects, e.g.

Hast du nie von ihm gehört?
Have you never heard of him?
Ich hätte niemals an so was gedacht.
I would never have thought of such a thing.

Ich kann das Brot nicht damit schneiden.
I can’t cut the bread with it/that.

Ich habe noch nicht an meine Nichte geschrieben.
I haven’t written to my niece yet.

The previous example but one could be expressed with a dative instead of with a preposition, in which case nicht follows this definite (indirect) object, e.g.

Ich habe meiner Nichte noch nicht geschrieben.

e) predicative adjectives, e.g.

Die Fensterscheibe ist nicht kaputt.
The window pane isn’t broken.

Ich bin nicht blöd.
I’m not stupid.

f) any word or phrase which is specifically negated, even where this conflicts with the rules for the position of nicht given in 14.1.1, e.g.

Wir wollen es nicht diese Woche machen (sondern nächste Woche). (emphatic)
We don’t want to do it this week (but next week).

Er hat im Garten nicht gearbeitet, sondern gespielt.
He wasn’t working in the garden (but playing).

Nicht der Kanzler hat das gesagt.
It wasn’t the prime minister who said it.

14.2 Notes on negatives

a) ‘Not ... a/any’ or ‘no + noun’ are usually translated by kein, e.g.

Ich habe kein Auto. (nicht ein is not possible here)
I don’t have a car./I have no car.

Er gibt kein Geld aus.
He doesn’t spend any money./He spends no money.
The combination nicht ... ein is possible when ein is stressed meaning ‘not a/one single’, e.g.

Wir sind vier Wochen in Südafrika gewesen und haben nicht einen Löwen gesehen.
We were in South Africa for four weeks and did not see one lion.

But this might also be expressed as follows:

Wir sind vier Wochen in Südafrika gewesen und haben keinen einzigen Löwen gesehen.
We were in South Africa for four weeks and did not see a single lion.

b) ‘Not one’ is nicht ein or keiner, e.g.

Nicht einer meiner Freunde hat mich besucht, als ich krank war.
Not one of my friends visited me when I was sick.

Keiner meiner Freunde hat mich besucht, als ich krank war.
None of my friends visited me when I was sick.

Compare keiner meiner Freunde/keine meiner Freundinnen ‘none of my friends’ (definitely takes a singular verb in German).

c) Further uses of kein:
The following examples show how kein sometimes renders a simple English ‘not’:

Diese Tiere fressen kein Gras.
These animals don’t eat grass.

But this can also be expressed as follows:

Gras fressen diese Tiere nicht.

Es waren keine normalen Katzen.
They were not/no ordinary cats.

Er kann/spricht kein Deutsch.
He doesn’t know (any) German./He can’t speak German.

The following expressions are all negated by kein, not nicht: Dienst haben (to be on duty), Durst haben (to be thirsty), Eile haben (to be in a hurry), Hunger haben (to be hungry), e.g.

Ich habe keine Eile.
I’m not in a hurry.
Ich habe keinen Hunger.
I’m not hungry.

d) ‘No(t) … at all’ is rendered by either gar nicht/kein or überhaupt nicht/kein, which are completely synonymous and interchangeable, e.g.

Ich hatte gar nicht daran gedacht./Ich hatte überhaupt nicht daran gedacht.
I hadn’t thought of it at all.

Ich habe gar kein Auto./Ich habe überhaupt kein Auto.
I haven’t got a car at all.

Er hat gar kein Geld./Er hat überhaupt kein Geld.
He has no money at all.

e) ‘Not … until’ is translated by erst (never nicht … bis), which can also be rendered by ‘only’ in English (see use of erst with age in 13.5), e.g.

Er kommt erst morgen.
He’s not coming until tomorrow./He’s only coming tomorrow.

Sie kommen erst nächsten Montag.
They are not coming till next Monday.

Erst dann wird’s passieren.
Only then/Not till then will it happen.

f) ‘Not … either’ is translated simply by auch nicht/kein.

Ich gehe auch nicht.
I’m not going either.

Sie hat auch keins.
She hasn’t got one either. (i.e. a car, neuter acc.)

g) ‘Not yet’ is translated by noch nicht, e.g.

Das neue Krankenhaus ist noch nicht eröffnet worden.
The new hospital hasn’t been opened yet.

Nie, but never niemals, is also very frequently used in combination with noch, without the meaning changing much; it possibly adds a slight connotation of ‘never ever’ e.g.
Er hat (noch) nie ein Versprechen eingehalten.
He’s never (yet) kept a promise.

Noch nie can never be used with reference to a future activity, e.g.

Die Regierung wird dieses Gesetz nie verabschieden.
The government will never pass this law.

h) Note the following affirmative/negative couplets:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>etwas</th>
<th>something</th>
<th>jemand</th>
<th>someone, somebody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nichts</td>
<td>nothing</td>
<td>niemand</td>
<td>no-one, nobody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irgendwo</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>je(mals)</td>
<td>ever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nirgendwo</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
<td>nie(mals)</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: nie zuvor (never before) (see 9.4.8).

i) When contradicting a negative question, ‘yes’ is rendered by doch, not ja (compare French si), e.g.

A: Du bist nicht verheiratet, oder? B: Doch.
A: You’re not married, are you? B: Yes, (I am).

English question tags such as ‘Is he/Isn’t he?’, ‘Will they/Won’t they?’, ‘Are there/Aren’t there?’ etc., which vary according to the subject and verb previously mentioned, are all rendered in German simply by nicht wahr?, e.g.

Aber er hat’s nicht alleine geschafft, nicht wahr?
But he didn’t manage it on his own, did he?

Er fliegt morgen nach Japan, nicht wahr?
He’s flying to Japan tomorrow, isn’t he?

Southern Germany and Austria mostly use gell? instead of nicht wahr? and the latter is very commonly abbreviated in speech to nicht? or even ne?, e.g.

Du bist um sechs wieder da, gell/nicht/ne?
You’ll be back here at six, won’t you?

Also commonly heard in spoken German is oder? See the first example above in section i).

j) ‘Even’ is usually rendered by sogar, while ‘not even’ is normally rendered by nicht einmal, e.g.
Sogar er ist mitgekommen.
Even he came along.

but

Sein Name wurde nicht einmal erwähnt.
His name wasn’t even mentioned.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>German Equivalent</th>
<th>English Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>d.h.</td>
<td>das heißt</td>
<td>i.e. that is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u.</td>
<td>und</td>
<td>&amp; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u.a.</td>
<td>unter anderen/-em</td>
<td>i.a. inter alia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u. dgl.</td>
<td>und dergleichen</td>
<td>and such like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u.s.f.</td>
<td>und so fort</td>
<td>etc. et cetera, and so on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u.s.w.</td>
<td>und so weiter</td>
<td>etc. et cetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z.B.</td>
<td>zum Beispiel</td>
<td>e.g. for example</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Men ending in -er do not change in the plural and the females add -in with a plural in -innen. Male inhabitants ending in -e are weak nouns (see 6.1.1.h), as are Ungar and Zypriot; the female equivalent ends in -in and is of course not weak. Only Deutscher is an adjectival noun, the female equivalent consequently being Deutsche (see 6.5.1).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Inhabitant</th>
<th>Female inhabitant</th>
<th>Adjective/language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Afghanistan</td>
<td>Afghanistan</td>
<td>Afghane</td>
<td>Afghanin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>Afrika</td>
<td>Afrikaner</td>
<td>Afrikanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albania</td>
<td>Albanien</td>
<td>Albaner</td>
<td>Albanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algeria</td>
<td>Algerien</td>
<td>Algerier</td>
<td>Algerierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America</td>
<td>Amerika</td>
<td>Amerikaner</td>
<td>Amerikanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angola</td>
<td>Angola</td>
<td>Angolaner</td>
<td>Angolanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabia</td>
<td>Saudi-Arabien</td>
<td>Araber</td>
<td>Araberin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>Argentinien</td>
<td>Argentinier</td>
<td>Argentinerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armenia</td>
<td>Armenien</td>
<td>Armenier</td>
<td>Armenierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>Asien</td>
<td>Asiat</td>
<td>Asiatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Australien</td>
<td>Australier</td>
<td>Australerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>Österreich</td>
<td>Österreicher</td>
<td>Österreicherin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azerbaidjan</td>
<td>Aserbaidschan</td>
<td>Aserbaidschaner</td>
<td>Aserbaidschanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belarus</td>
<td>Weißrussland</td>
<td>Weißrusse</td>
<td>Weißrussin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>Belgien</td>
<td>Belgier</td>
<td>Belgierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flanders</td>
<td>Flämisch</td>
<td>Flämisch</td>
<td>Flämisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wallonia</td>
<td>Wallonisch</td>
<td>Wallonin</td>
<td>Wallonisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolivia</td>
<td>Bolivianisch</td>
<td>Bolivianer</td>
<td>Bolivianisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bosnia</td>
<td>Bosnisch</td>
<td>Bosnier</td>
<td>Bosnisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botswana</td>
<td>Botswananisch</td>
<td>Botswanaerin</td>
<td>Botswananisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brasilien</td>
<td>Brasilianisch</td>
<td>Brasilianerin</td>
<td>Brasilianisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulgarien</td>
<td>Bulgarisch</td>
<td>Bulgarien</td>
<td>Bulgarisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burma</td>
<td>Burmesisch</td>
<td>Birmanin</td>
<td>Birmanisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burma</td>
<td>Birmanisch</td>
<td>Burndier</td>
<td>Burndier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kambodschan</td>
<td>Kambodschanisch</td>
<td>Kambodschanerin</td>
<td>Kambodschanisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamerun</td>
<td>Kamerunisch</td>
<td>Kameruner</td>
<td>Kameruner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanada</td>
<td>Kanadisch</td>
<td>Kanadier</td>
<td>Kanadier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambodia</td>
<td>Cambodia</td>
<td>Cambodia</td>
<td>Cambodia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cameroon</td>
<td>Cameroon</td>
<td>Cameroon</td>
<td>Cameroon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Kanadisch</td>
<td>Kanadier</td>
<td>Kanadier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central African Republic</td>
<td>die Zentralafrikanische Republik</td>
<td>Zentralafrikaner</td>
<td>Zentralafrikanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chad</td>
<td>(der) Tschad</td>
<td>Tschader</td>
<td>Tschaderin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chile</td>
<td>Chile</td>
<td>Chilene</td>
<td>Chilenin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Chinesin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columbia</td>
<td>Kolumbien</td>
<td>Kolumbianer</td>
<td>Kolumbianerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comores</td>
<td>die Komoren</td>
<td>Komorer</td>
<td>Komorerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congo</td>
<td>Kongo</td>
<td>Kongoleses</td>
<td>Kongolesin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costa Rica</td>
<td>Costarika</td>
<td>Costarikaner</td>
<td>Costarikanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Croatia</td>
<td>Kroatien</td>
<td>Kroate</td>
<td>Kroatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuba</td>
<td>Kuba</td>
<td>Kubaner</td>
<td>Kubanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyprus</td>
<td>Zypern</td>
<td>Zypriot</td>
<td>Zypriotin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Czech Republic</td>
<td>Tschechien</td>
<td>Tscheche</td>
<td>Tschechin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>Dänemark</td>
<td>Däne</td>
<td>Dänin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dominican Republic</td>
<td>die Dominikanische Republik</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecuador</td>
<td>Ecuadorianer</td>
<td>Ecuadorianerin</td>
<td>ecuadorianisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>Ägypter</td>
<td>Ägypterin</td>
<td>ägyptisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Salvador</td>
<td>Salvadorianer</td>
<td>Salvadorianerin</td>
<td>salvadorianisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>Engländer</td>
<td>Englännderin</td>
<td>englisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estonia</td>
<td>Este</td>
<td>Estin</td>
<td>estnisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>Ethiopianer</td>
<td>Ethiopianerin</td>
<td>ethiopisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>Europäer</td>
<td>Europäerin</td>
<td>europäisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiji</td>
<td>Fidschianer</td>
<td>Fidschianerin</td>
<td>fidschianisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>Finne</td>
<td>Finnländerin</td>
<td>finnländisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>Franzose</td>
<td>Französin</td>
<td>französisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gabon</td>
<td>Gabuner</td>
<td>Gabunerin</td>
<td>gabunisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gambia</td>
<td>Gambier</td>
<td>Gambierin</td>
<td>gambisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Georgia</td>
<td>Georgier</td>
<td>Georgierin</td>
<td>georgisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>Deutscher</td>
<td>Deutsche</td>
<td>deutsch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Republic of Germany</td>
<td>die Bundesrepublik Deutschland (die BRD)</td>
<td>Ghanaer</td>
<td>Ghanaerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ghana</td>
<td>Ghana</td>
<td>Ghanaerin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ghana</td>
<td>Ghana</td>
<td>Ghanaerin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Britain</td>
<td>Großbritannien</td>
<td>Brite</td>
<td>Britin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>Griechenland</td>
<td>Griechen</td>
<td>Griechin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>Griechenland</td>
<td>Griechen</td>
<td>Griechin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenland</td>
<td>Grönland</td>
<td>Grönlanderin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenland</td>
<td>Grönland</td>
<td>Grönlanderin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guatemala</td>
<td>Guatemala</td>
<td>Guatemaltekin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea</td>
<td>Guinea</td>
<td>Guineerin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guyana</td>
<td>Guyana</td>
<td>Guyanerin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haiti</td>
<td>Haiti</td>
<td>Haitianerin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haiti</td>
<td>Haiti</td>
<td>Haitierin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holland</td>
<td>Holland</td>
<td>Holländerin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honduras</td>
<td>Honduras</td>
<td>Honduranerin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>Ungarn</td>
<td>Ungarin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iceland</td>
<td>Island</td>
<td>Isländer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female Inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>Indien</td>
<td>Inder</td>
<td>Inderin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>Indonesien</td>
<td>Indonesier</td>
<td>Indonesierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iran</td>
<td>(der) Iran</td>
<td>Iraner</td>
<td>Iranerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iraq</td>
<td>(der) Irak</td>
<td>Iraker</td>
<td>Irakerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ireland</td>
<td>Irland</td>
<td>Ire</td>
<td>Irin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>Israeli</td>
<td>Israeliin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Italien</td>
<td>Italiener</td>
<td>Italienerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ivory Coast</td>
<td>die Elfenbeinküste</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td>Jamaika</td>
<td>Jamaikaner</td>
<td>Jamaikanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japaner</td>
<td>Japanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jordan</td>
<td>Jordanien</td>
<td>Jordanier</td>
<td>Jordanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kazakhstan</td>
<td>Kasachstan</td>
<td>Kasache</td>
<td>Kasachin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>Kenia</td>
<td>Kenianer</td>
<td>Kenianerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>Koreaner</td>
<td>Koreanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuwait</td>
<td>Kuwait</td>
<td>Kuwaiter</td>
<td>Kuwaierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kyrgyzstan</td>
<td>Kirgisien/Kirgisistan</td>
<td>Kirgisier</td>
<td>Kirgisierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laos</td>
<td>Laos</td>
<td>Laote</td>
<td>Laotin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lappland</td>
<td>Lappland</td>
<td>Lappe</td>
<td>Lappin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latvia</td>
<td>Lettland</td>
<td>Lette</td>
<td>Lettin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebanon</td>
<td>(der) Libanon</td>
<td>Libanese</td>
<td>Libanesin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liberia</td>
<td>Liberien</td>
<td>Liberier</td>
<td>Liberierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Libya</td>
<td>Libyen</td>
<td>Libyer</td>
<td>Libyerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liechtenstein</td>
<td>Liechtenstein</td>
<td>Liechtensteiner</td>
<td>Liechtensteinerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithuania</td>
<td>Litauen</td>
<td>Litauer</td>
<td>Litauerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>Luxemburg</td>
<td>Luxemburger</td>
<td>Luxemburgerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macedonia</td>
<td>Mazedonien</td>
<td>Mazedonier</td>
<td>Mazedonierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malawi</td>
<td>Malawi</td>
<td>Malawier</td>
<td>Malawierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaysia</td>
<td>Malaysia</td>
<td>Malaysier</td>
<td>Malaysierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maldives</td>
<td>die Malediven</td>
<td>Malediver</td>
<td>Malediverin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mali</td>
<td>Mali</td>
<td>Malier</td>
<td>Malierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malta</td>
<td>Malta</td>
<td>Malteser</td>
<td>Malteserin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mauritania</td>
<td>Mauretanien</td>
<td>Mauretanier</td>
<td>Mauretanierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Mexiko</td>
<td>Mexikaner</td>
<td>Mexikanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moldova</td>
<td>Moldawien</td>
<td>Moldawier</td>
<td>Moldawierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monaco</td>
<td>Monaco</td>
<td>Monegasse</td>
<td>Monegassin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mongolia</td>
<td>die Mongolei</td>
<td>Mongole</td>
<td>Mongolin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morocco</td>
<td>Marokko</td>
<td>Marokkaner</td>
<td>Marokkanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mozambique</td>
<td>Mosambik</td>
<td>Mosambikaner</td>
<td>Mosambikanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namibia</td>
<td>Namibia</td>
<td>Namibier</td>
<td>Namibierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nepal</td>
<td>Nepal</td>
<td>Nepalese</td>
<td>Nepalesin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>die Niederlande</td>
<td>Niederländer</td>
<td>Niederländerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>Neuseeland</td>
<td>Neuseeländer</td>
<td>Neuseeländerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicaragua</td>
<td>Nicaragua</td>
<td>Nicaraguaner</td>
<td>Nicaraguanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niger</td>
<td>Niger</td>
<td>Nigrer</td>
<td>Nigrerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Nigerian</td>
<td>Nigerianer</td>
<td>nigerianisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>Norweger</td>
<td>Norwegerin</td>
<td>norwegisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pakistan</td>
<td>Pakistanis</td>
<td>Pakistaniner</td>
<td>pakistanisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palästina</td>
<td>Panämener</td>
<td>Panamenerin</td>
<td>panamänschisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panama</td>
<td>Papua-Neuguineer</td>
<td>Papua-Neuguineerin</td>
<td>papua-neuguineisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraguay</td>
<td>Paraguayander</td>
<td>Paraguayanderin</td>
<td>paraguayanderisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persien</td>
<td>Perser</td>
<td>Perserin</td>
<td>persisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peru</td>
<td>Peruiner</td>
<td>Peruinerin</td>
<td>peruanisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippinen</td>
<td>Philippiner</td>
<td>Philippinerin</td>
<td>philippinisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polen</td>
<td>Polin</td>
<td>Polinerin</td>
<td>polnisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>Portugiese</td>
<td>Portugieserin</td>
<td>portugiesisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puerto Rico</td>
<td>Puerto Ricaner</td>
<td>Puerto Ricanerin</td>
<td>puertoricanisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qatar</td>
<td>Katarer</td>
<td>Katarerin</td>
<td>katarisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romania</td>
<td>Rumänien</td>
<td>Rumänin</td>
<td>rumänisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>Russland</td>
<td>Russin</td>
<td>russisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>Ruanda</td>
<td>Ruanderin</td>
<td>ruandisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samoa</td>
<td>Samoaner</td>
<td>Samoanerin</td>
<td>samoanisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td>Schottland</td>
<td>Schottin</td>
<td>schottisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senegal</td>
<td>Senegal</td>
<td>Senegalesin</td>
<td>senegalesisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seychelles</td>
<td>die Seschellen</td>
<td>Sescheller</td>
<td>seschellisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sierra Leone</td>
<td>Sierra Leone</td>
<td>Sierraleonerin</td>
<td>sierraleonisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovakia</td>
<td>Slowakien</td>
<td>Slowakin</td>
<td>slowakisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovenia</td>
<td>Slowenien</td>
<td>Slowenin</td>
<td>slowenisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solomon Islands</td>
<td>die Salomonen/Salomon-Inseln</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somalia</td>
<td>Somalien</td>
<td>Somaliner</td>
<td>somalisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>Südafrika</td>
<td>Südafrikanerin</td>
<td>südafrikanisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Spanien</td>
<td>Spanier</td>
<td>spanisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sri Lanka</td>
<td>Sri Lanka</td>
<td>Srilanker</td>
<td>srilankisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sudan</td>
<td>der Sudan</td>
<td>Sudanese</td>
<td>Sudanesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sudaner</td>
<td>Sudanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surinam</td>
<td>Suriname</td>
<td>Surinamer</td>
<td>Surinamerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Surinamerin</td>
<td>surinamisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>Schweden</td>
<td>Schwede</td>
<td>Schwedin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Schweder</td>
<td>schweizerisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>die Schweiz</td>
<td>Schweizer</td>
<td>Schweizerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Syreren</td>
<td>syrisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syria</td>
<td>Syrien</td>
<td>Syrer</td>
<td>Syrerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tajikistan</td>
<td>Tadschikistan</td>
<td>Tadschike</td>
<td>Tadschikin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tadschikin</td>
<td>tadschikisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>Taiwanese</td>
<td>Taiwanesin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Taiwanesin</td>
<td>taiwanesisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>Tansania</td>
<td>Tansanier</td>
<td>Tansanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tansaner</td>
<td>tansanisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Thailänder</td>
<td>Thailänderin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Thailänderin</td>
<td>thailändisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tibet</td>
<td>Tibet</td>
<td>Tibetaner</td>
<td>Tibetanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tibeter</td>
<td>tibetisch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Togo</td>
<td>Togo</td>
<td>Togoer</td>
<td>Togoerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tonga</td>
<td>Tonga</td>
<td>Tonganer</td>
<td>Tonganerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunisia</td>
<td>Tunesien</td>
<td>Tunesier</td>
<td>Tunesier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>die Türkui</td>
<td>Türke</td>
<td>Türkine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkmenistan</td>
<td>Turkmenistan</td>
<td>Turkmene</td>
<td>Turkmenin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uganda</td>
<td>Uganda</td>
<td>Ugander</td>
<td>Uganderin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ukraine</td>
<td>die Ukraine</td>
<td>Ukrainer</td>
<td>Ukrainerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Arab Emirates</td>
<td>die Vereinigten Arabischen Emirate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>das Vereinigte Königreich</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>die Vereinigten Staaten (die USA)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uruguay</td>
<td>Uruguay</td>
<td>Uruguayer</td>
<td>Uruguayerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uzbekistan</td>
<td>Usbekistan</td>
<td>Ubeke</td>
<td>Usbekein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vatican (City)</td>
<td>der Vatikan, die Vatikanstadt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venezuela</td>
<td>Venezuela</td>
<td>Venezolaner</td>
<td>Venezolanerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnam</td>
<td>Vietnam</td>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td>Vietnamesin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Female inhabitant</td>
<td>Adjective/language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virgin Islands</td>
<td>die Jungferninseln</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wales</td>
<td>Wales</td>
<td>Waliser</td>
<td>Waliserin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yemen</td>
<td>Jemen</td>
<td>Jemenit</td>
<td>Jemenitin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zaire</td>
<td>Zaire</td>
<td>Zairer</td>
<td>Zairerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zambia</td>
<td>Sambia</td>
<td>Sambier</td>
<td>Sambierin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td>Simbabwe</td>
<td>Simbabwer</td>
<td>Simbabwerin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
abbreviations, German equivalent of ‘st’, ‘nd’, ‘rd’ and ‘th’ 13.2.1
aber 11.1
Ablautreihen 10.1.4.2
abstract nouns 5.1.1
accusative case after prepositions 12.1, 12.3
accusative case, other uses of 4.3
accusative pronouns 7.1.2
action versus state with the passive 10.4.3
address, forms of 7.1.1.1
addressing people 7.1.1.1
adjectival endings 8.1.1 to 8.1.4
   after der/die/das 8.1.1
   after ein/eine/ein and mein etc. 8.1.2
   after indefinite pronouns 8.1.4
   after nothing 8.1.3
adjectival nouns 6.7, 6.7.1
adjectives 8.0
   comparative of 8.2
   comparatives that don’t umlaut 8.2
   indeclinable 8.1.5
   possessive 7.2.1
   prefixed to the noun 8.1.5.1
   superlative of 8.3
adjectives of nationality, list of Appendix 1
adverbial expressions of time 4.3, 9.4
adverbial expressions of time in acc. 4.3, 9.4
adverbial expressions of time in gen. 4.4, 9.4
adverbs 9.0
   comparative of 8.2
intensifying 9.3
interrogative 9.7
superlative of 8.3
adverbs of manner and degree 9.6
adverbs of place and direction 9.5
adverbs of time 9.4
adverbs of time and direct object, word order of 9.4.4
‘afterwards’ 9.4.8
‘again’ 9.4.8
age 13.5
alle 5.5, 7.7.1, 8.1.4
alles 6.7.1, 7.6.3
alphabet 2.6
als meaning ‘as’ 5.3.1, 8.2.1
als meaning ‘when’ 11.2
alternatives to the passive 10.4.7
am (with clock) 13.7
am … -sten 8.3.2
andere 5.5, 7.7.1, 8.1.4
anderthalb 13.3
animals, gender of 6.1, 6.1.1
anstatt 11.3
anstatt dass/zu 11.2
‘anything’ 7.7
apposition, nouns in 4.6
arithmetic 13.4
article, definite 5.1
article, indefinite 5.3
articles 5.0
articles, pronominal use of 7.1.5
auch nicht 14.2.f
‘be, to’ 10.1.1.1
‘before’ 9.4.8, 12.3.h
beide 7.7.1.b
beides 7.7.1.b
beim 10.7, 12.2, 12.5
besonders 9.3, 9.3.1
bis as a conjunction 11.2
bis as a preposition 12.1
bleiben as a copula verb 4.2
‘both’  7.7.1.b
brauchen  10.2, 10.2.1

calculation  13.4
capital letters, use of  2.3
cardinal numerals  13.1
case  4.0
case endings on nouns  4.1
case forms in English  4.0
cases, order of in paradigms  4.7
-chen  6.1.3.a, 6.2.1, 6.3
cities, names of  6.1.3.c, 6.4.2
clauses, coordinate  11.0
clauses, subordinate  11.0
clock, the  13.7
colons with direct speech  3.2
colours  8.1.5
commas, use of  3.1
commas and full-stops/periods, use of  13.1.1
  with numerals  
  commas with relative clauses  3.1.2
  comparative constructions  8.2.1
  comparative of adjectives  8.2
  comparative of adverbs  8.2
  complex sentence  11.0
  compound nouns  6.8
  compound nouns, gender of  6.1
  compound sentence  11.0
  conditional perfect tense  10.1.9
  conditional tense  10.1.8
  conjunctions  11.0
    coordinating  11.1
    correlative  11.4
    subordinating  11.2
  conjunctions introducing infinitive clauses  11.3
  consonants, pronunciation of  1.3
  contraction of prepositions with the definite article  12.5
  coordinate clauses  11.0
  coordinating conjunctions  11.1
  copula verbs  4.2, 5.3.1
  correlative conjunctions  11.4
‘could have done’
countries
inhabitants of
list of
names of
cubic measurement
currency
dar- + preposition
dahin
damit
dass
omission of
date, the
date, asking the
dative case
after prepositions
other uses of
dative -e
dative plural -n
dative pronouns
dative reflexive pronouns
dative with von in lieu of genitive (see von)
days of the week
definite article
contraction of prepositions with the
Dehnungs-
Demonstrative pronouns
denn
der/die/das
deren
dessen
determiners
pronominal use of
Deutsche(r)
dieser
diminutives
diphthongs, pronunciation of
direct object
direct speech, use of colons with
10.3.2.5
5.1.1.1.b, 6.1.3
6.5.1
Appendix 1
5.1.1.1.b, Appendix 1
13.10.2
13.6
7.1.4, 10.10.1
9.5
11.2
11.2
7.6, 10.3.1.1, 11.2
4.3, 13.8
9.7.1, 13.8
12.2, 12.3
4.5
4.1
4.1
7.1.3
7.3.1
4.4, 12.2
6.1.1.d, 9.4.7, 13.8
5.1
12.5
5.1.1
2.1
5.1, 5.1.1, 5.2, 7.4
11.1
5.1, 6.1
7.6
7.6
5.0
7.1.5
6.1.1.a, 6.5.1
5.0, 5.2
6.1.3.a, 6.3
1.2
5.1
3.2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>direction, adverbs of</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distance, measuring</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>doch</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dorthin</strong></td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double infinitive constructions</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double infinitives of non-modal verbs</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>du</strong></td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dummy subject <strong>es</strong>, passives with a</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dürfen</strong></td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Durst haben</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Eile haben</strong></td>
<td>14.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ein</strong> (= ‘one’)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ein paar</strong></td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>eineinhalb</strong></td>
<td>13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>eine</strong></td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>eine</strong>, adjectival endings</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>eins</strong>, adjectival endings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>entweder ... oder</strong></td>
<td>11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>erst</strong> (= not until)</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>erster</strong></td>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>es/dies/das</strong>, as subject pronouns</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘especially’</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>essen</strong>, present tense of</td>
<td>10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>etwas</strong></td>
<td>6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euros</td>
<td>13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘everybody’</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘everyone’</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exclamation marks</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expressions, two – of time in one clause</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expressions of time</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extended adjectival phrases</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fallen lassen</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-farben</strong></td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feminine gender, rules for</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feminizing agents</td>
<td>6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘finally’</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;especially&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘firstly’</td>
<td>9.4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘for’ in expressions of time</td>
<td>9.4.6, 10.1.5.3, 10.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign towns, names of</td>
<td>6.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forms of address</td>
<td>7.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fractions</td>
<td>13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘from’ towns and countries</td>
<td>12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fühlen</strong> in double infinitive constructions</td>
<td>10.2.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>furchtbar</strong></td>
<td>9.1, 9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future perfect</td>
<td>10.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future tense</td>
<td>10.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gar nicht</strong>/<strong>kein</strong></td>
<td>14.2.d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gas consumption, measuring</td>
<td>13.10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>geben</strong>, present tense of</td>
<td>10.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gegenüber</strong></td>
<td>7.1.4, 12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gehören</strong></td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gell</strong></td>
<td>14.2.i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gender of nouns</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive case</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive case after prepositions</td>
<td>12.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive <strong>-es/-s</strong></td>
<td>4.1, 4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German towns, names of</td>
<td>6.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gern</strong></td>
<td>8.2, 8.3.2, 10.1.8, 10.2.c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gestern</strong></td>
<td>9.4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grades, school</td>
<td>13.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greetings in the accusative</td>
<td>4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>haben</strong></td>
<td>10.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>haben</strong> as the auxiliary verb in the perfect tense</td>
<td>10.1.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>haben</strong> or <strong>sein</strong> as the auxiliary verb in the perfect tense</td>
<td>10.1.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>halb</strong></td>
<td>13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hälfte, die</strong></td>
<td>13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>halten</strong>, present tense of</td>
<td>10.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hätte</strong></td>
<td>10.3.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>height</td>
<td>13.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-heit/-keit</strong></td>
<td>6.1.2.b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>helfen</strong> in double infinitive constructions</td>
<td>10.2.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>her</strong></td>
<td>9.7.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Herr 4.4, 4.5, 6.1.1.h, 6.2.4
heute 9.4.7
hier- + preposition 7.1.4
hierher 9.5, 9.7.3
hin and her 9.7.3
holidays 9.4.7
holidays (see zu) 12.2
hören in double infinitive constructions 10.2.1.1
Hunger haben 14.2.c
hyphen, use of 2.4

-ieren verbs 1.4, 10.1.5.1, 10.3.2.1, 11.2
if-clauses

ihr 7.1.1.1
imperative 10.1.3
imperfect tense 10.1.4
use of 10.1.4.3
imperfect tense of irregular verbs 10.1.4.2
imperfect tense of regular verbs 10.1.4.1

-in 6.1.2.a, 6.5.1, 6.7
indeclinable adjectives 8.1.5
indefinite article 5.3
omission of 5.3.1
indefinite pronouns 7.7
as determiners 5.3, 7.7.1
indirect object 4.0, 5.1
indirect object pronouns 7.1.3
indirect questions 11.2
infinitive 10.5
used as a noun 10.5.5
characteristics of the 10.5.1
used as nouns 6.1.3.b
infinitive clauses 11.3
inhabitants of countries 6.5.1
list of  Appendix 1
inhabitants of towns 6.4.3
inseparable verbal prefixes 1.4, 10.1.5.1, 10.9.2
inseparable verbs 1.4, 10.1.5.1, 10.9.2
intensifying adverbs 9.3
interrogative adverbs 9.7
interrogative pronouns 7.5, 11.2
interrogatives 11.2
intransitive verbs 10.1.5.2.4, 10.11
  and the passive 10.11.2
  passive use of 10.4.6
inverted commas 3.3
irdendwo 14.2.h
irregular verbs
  alphabetical list of 10.12.1
  imperfect tense of 10.14.2
  list of by group 10.12
je(mals) 14.2.h
je ... desto 8.2.1
jeder(mann) 7.7
jemand 7.7, 14.2.h
jemand anders 7.7
jener 5.0, 5.2
jetzt 9.4.7
keiner 14.2.b
kennen lernen 10.9.1.1
Kilo 13.9
können 10.2.b
languages, list Appendix 1
lass 10.1.3
lassen 10.1.3, 10.2.1.1
lassen with intransitive verbs, use of 10.11.1
laufen, present tense of 6.1.3.a, 6.2.1, 6.3
-lein
length 13.10.1
lesen, present tense of 10.1.1.1
letters, dates in 4.3, 13.8
letters, how to begin 3.4
-‘ly’ 9.0
man 7.1.1.2, 7.7.2, 10.4.7
man, case forms of 7.7.2
marks/grades, school 13.11
masculine gender, rules for 6.1.1
measurement
measurement, cubic
measurement, square
mehrere
mein, dein, sein etc.
meine, der etc.
meine, der/die/das
meiner etc.
meinetwegen etc.
meinige, der/die/das
meisten, die
möchte

modal auxiliary verbs
with passive
with perfective infinitives
mögen
money
months of the year
morgen
müssen

nach
names of countries
names of towns
of foreign towns
of German towns
nationalities
nehmen, present tense of
neuter gender, rules for
‘never’
‘never (ever)’
new spelling
nicht ... ein
nicht einmal
nicht nur ... sondern auch
nicht wahr
nichts
nie(mals)

niemand
nirgendwo
‘no’ + noun
‘no one’
‘nobody’

noch nicht
nominative case, other uses of
nominative pronouns
North German pronunciation
‘not a/any’
‘not either’
‘not one’
‘not … until’
‘not yet’
‘nothing’
nouns, gender of
‘now’
numerals
    numerals, cardinal
    numerals, ordinal

object pronouns
oder as question tag
ohne
    as a conjunction
    as a preposition
ohne dass/zu
‘one’ as a numeral
order of cases in paradigms
ordinal numerals

paar, ein
participial constructions, English
participles
    past
    present
    use of in extended adjectival phrases
participles in extended adjectival phrases
Partizip II
passive
    action versus state with
    alternatives to the
intransitive verbs and the passive use of intransitive verbs
with a dummy subject es
with indirect objects
with a modal verb
past participles
use of in extended adjectival phrases
perfect tense
use of
perfective infinitives, modals used with
periods of the day
personal pronouns
persons of the verb
petrol consumption, measuring
place, adverbs of
pluperfect tense
pluralization of nouns
plurals
pm (with clock)
possessive adjectives
possessive pronouns
alternative forms of
possessives
predicate adjectives followed by a prepositional object
prepositional adverbs
use of before subordinate clauses
prepositional objects after verbs
prepositions
adverbial use of
after adjectives
contraction of with the definite article
that take the accusative case
that take accusative and dative case
that take the dative case
that take the genitive case
present participles
use of in extended adjectival phrases
present tense
of irregular verbs
use of to express the future
professions 5.3.1
progressive tenses 10.7
progressive verbal forms in English 10.1.1, 10.1.4.1, 10.1.5

pronominal use of articles 7.1.5
pronominal use of determiners 7.1.5
pronouns 7.0
demonstrative 7.4
indefinite 7.7
indefinite pronouns as determiners 7.7.1
interrogative 7.5
possessive 7.2.2
reflexive 7.3
relative 7.6
object 7.1
subject 7.1
pronouns

questions, indirect 11.2
question words 11.2
quotation marks 3.3

raten, present tense of 10.1.1.1
Rechtschreibreform 2.5
reflexive pronouns 7.3
dative forms of 7.3.1
used independently 7.3.2
reflexive verbs 7.3
regional variants (pronunciation) 1.5

regular verbs
deriving past participle of 10.1.5.1
imperfect tense of 10.1.4.1
subjunctive II of 10.3.2.3
that take sein in the perfect 10.1.5.2.1

relative clauses, use of commas with 3.1.2
relative pronouns 7.6
with prepositions 7.6.1
religious festivities (see zu) 12.2
rivers, names of 6.1.1.g, 6.1.2.e
scharfes s
scheinen as a copula verb
scheußlich
schlafen, present tense of
school marks/grades
schrecklich
seasons
second person subject pronouns
sehen, present tense of
in double infinitive constructions
sehr
sein (to be)
as the auxiliary verb in the perfect tense
as a copula verb
with intransitive verbs, use of
regular verbs that take sein in the perfect
+ zu + infinitive in lieu of Eng. passive
seit

selber
selbst
separable prefixes
separable verbs
‘should have done’

sich
sich, with man
sich selbst
Sie
sitzen bleiben
so dass
sogar
sollen
sollte
‘somebody’
‘someone’
‘something’
sondern
South German pronunciation
sowie ... als/wie auch
spazieren gehen
spelling 2.0, 9.4.7
square measurement 13.10.2
ß, use of 2.5
statt as a conjunction 11.3
statt dass/zu 11.2
stehen bleiben 10.9.1.1
stoßen, present tense of 10.1.1.1
street names 5.1.1
stress 1.4
strong verbs, subjunctive II of 10.3.2.1
subject pronouns 7.1
  second person 7.1.1.1
subjunctive 10.3
subjunctive I 10.3.1
subjunctive II 10.3.2
  of regular verbs 10.3.2.3
  in would-clauses 10.3.2.4
subordinate clauses 11.0
subordinating conjunctions 11.2
superlative of adjectives 8.3
superlative of adverbs 8.3

‘that/those’, as demonstrative adjective 5.2
‘the … the’ 8.2.1
‘then’ 9.4.8
time, asking/telling the 13.7
Time-Manner-Place rule 9.4.1
‘to’, how to translate into German 12.6
towns
  inhabitants of 6.4.3
  names of 5.1.1, 6.4
transitive verbs 10.11
treten, present tense of 10.1.1.1
tun, present tense of 10.1.1.1
two-way prepositions 12.3
typisch 9.1

überhaupt nicht/kein 14.2.d
um
  as a conjunction 11.3
  as a preposition 12.1
um ... zu
as a conjunction 11.3
use of with infinitives 10.5.3

Umlaut
lack of in comparative 8.2
use of 2.2

-ung 1.5, 6.1.2

verbal stem 10.1.1
verbs 10.0
ending in -eln 10.1.1
ending in -ern 10.1.1
followed by dative 4.5
followed by prepositional objects 10.10
formation of future tense 10.1.2
formation of tenses 10.1
indicating a change of state 10.1.5.2
inseparable 1.4, 10.9.2
with inseparable prefixes 10.9.2
intransitive 10.11
modal auxiliary 10.2
of motion 10.1.5.2
passive 10.4
patterns of irregular 10.1.4.2
persons of present tense 10.1.1
present tense 10.1.1
present tense of irregular verbs 10.1.1.1
reflexive 7.3
separable 10.9.1
with separable prefixes 10.9.1
transitive 10.11

verschiedene 5.5, 7.7.1, 8.1.4
viele 5.5, 6.7.1, 7.7.1, 8.1.4

von instead of genitive 4.4
von, use of in passive 10.4.1
vor allem 9.3.1
vowel length 2.1
vowels, pronunciation of 1.1
während
  as a conjunction 11.2
  as a preposition 12.4
wann
wann ... auch 9.7, 11.2
wäre 7.7.e
warum 10.3.2.1
was 9.7, 11.2
was (= etwas) 7.5, 7.6.3
was ... auch 6.7.1, 14.2.h
weak nouns 7.7.e
weak nouns 6.1.1.h, 6.2.4, 6.5.1
weder ... noch 11.4
weekdays 9.4.7
weeks 9.4.7
weights 13.9
weil 11.1, 11.2
welche (= ‘some’) 7.7.1
welcher 5.0, 5.2
wenig 6.7.1
wenige 5.5, 7.7.1, 8.1.4
wenn 11.2
wenn-clauses 10.3.2.1, 11.2
wer/wen/wessen/wem 7.5
wer ... auch 7.7.e
werden 10.1.1.1
  as a copula verb 4.2
  in passive 10.4.1
  uses of 10.1.2.1
wessen 7.5
  ‘whatever’ 7.7.e
  ‘whenever’ 7.7.e
  ‘wherever’ 7.7.e
  ‘who, whom’ 4.0, 7.5
  ‘whoever’ 7.7.e
  ‘whose’ 7.5, 7.6.1
wie 9.7, 11.2
wo 7.5, 7.6.2, 9.7, 9.7.2, 11.2
wo(hin) ... auch 7.1.4, 7.5, 7.6.3, 7.7.e
wo(r): + preposition 7.5, 7.6.3
Index

woher 9.7, 9.7.2, 11.2
wohin 9.7, 9.7.2, 11.2
wohl 10.1.2.1, 10.2.c
wollen 10.2

word order
  adverbs of time in coordinate clauses 9.4.5
  adverbs of time and the finite verb 9.4.3
  adverbs of time and object 9.4.4
  in double infinitive constructions 10.2.1
  position of negatives 14.1
  position of two or more infinitives 10.2.1
  time-manner-place 9.4.1
  two expressions of time in one clause 9.4.2
  of verbs in coordinate clauses 11.0, 11.1
  of verbs in interrogative clauses 7.5
  of verbs in relative clauses 7.6
  of verbs in subordinate clauses 11.0, 11.2

würde 10.1.8, 10.3.2.1, 10.3.2.4

wüsste

zu
  as an adverb 12.0
  with brauchen 10.2.d
  as a preposition 12.2
  use of with infinitives 10.5.2, 10.5.3

zwo 13.1